



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York

by the omission of the first word. The Editor has confined himself principally to a thorough revision of Mr. Arnold's labors ; to such necessary changes as the union of the two parts into one volume required ; to the addition of a few explanatory notes ; an enlargement and improvement of the Latin and English vocabularies, and the correction of occasional errors of inadvertence or of typography.

Under the strong conviction that school books, above all others, should be accurately printed, the Editor has bestowed special care upon this point ; and he trusts that the present volume will be found free from even trifling errors of the press.

NEW YORK, *January 15, 1846*

A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

THE Latin being a *dead* (that is, an *unspoken*) language, it is not known how the Romans pronounced it. Hence every modern tongue adapts the pronunciation of Latin to its own peculiarities. In English, we follow the analogy or custom of the English language in respect to the sound of the vowels and the position of the accents; therefore—

1. The accent or stress of the voice is *always* on the *penultimate*, (the last syllable but one,) or the *antepenultimate*, (the last syllable but two,) as hom'o, tem'po-ris, da'tum, agri'ola, &c.

2. In words of more than two syllables, if the penultimate is *long*, the stress is upon it; if *short*, it is on the *antepenultimate*; as rad'cis, con'sŭlis, humā'nus, &c.

3. Every vowel has either a long or a short sound; as hōmīnēs, fāmā, āmicās, āmicī, pōpŭlōs, vētūs, tūtūs, tūtēlā, Cāesār, rēgērē, dēcōrīs.

4. Monosyllables ending in a vowel have the *long* sound, as dā, mē, sī, dō, tū; otherwise, the *short* sound, as āc, sēd, īn, ōb, hūc.

5. When a vowel comes before or between two consonants, it has the *short* sound, though in fact *long* by its position; as ān'nus, pēn'nā, pīg'nūs, lōn'gus, &c.

6. *E* final is never *mute*; in other words, it always *constitutes a syllable* with a preceding consonant or consonants; as ma-re, gran-de, es-se, a-bi-re, a-cū-te, vī-ce.

7. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s, j*) respectively before *e, æ, æ*, and *i*: as cērā, cœlŭm, cīs, gērō, gīgnō, &c. In other cases they are *hard*, (i. e. have the sound of *k* and *g* hard,) as cāp'rā, gūbernā'tōr, cōgo, Gallus, &c.

8. *Qu, gu* are pronounced respectively like *kw, gw*; as āntīquus = *antiquus*: san-guis = *sanguis*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Numerals above the line refer to the *Questions* when they are followed by a *curse*; to the *Table of Differences*, when not.

Two or more words connected together by a hyphen show that they are to be rendered into Latin by one word; as "natural-to-man." *humanus*; the-space-of-two-years," *biennium*; it-is, *est*, &c.

- (d) Nouns that end in *es* and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth declension*.
- (e) Nouns with *any ending* not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those with an ending belonging to some other declension but with a *genitive* in '*is*,' belong to the *third declension*.^a

7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.

The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive* verbs, and many *prepositions*.

8. A transitive verb is one that gives no *complete* meaning, till some person or thing is mentioned *to whom* or *which* the action was done.

He struck—(struck what?) the dog. He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

1.	2. 4.	3. 5.
am	um	em

But ¶ If a noun is *neuter*, its accusative is the *unaltered word*.^b

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*, after the endings of the nominative, as set down in the table,

TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS

Nouns that end in	Genitive		
a	æ	are of the first	} Declension.
us, er, um	i	. . second	
us, u	ūs*	. . fourth	
es	ei	. . fifth	
Those with <i>any other ending</i> , (or with these if their gen. end in ' <i>is</i> '),	is	. . third	

^b In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*. Hence in Latin, *gender*, as belonging to *things*, has nothing to do with *sex*.

* In Latin grammars it has always heretofore been asserted that nouns of the fourth declension ending in *u*, are indeclinable in the singular. The latest results, however, of the labors of German scholars seem to have settled that *cornu* has the genitive *cornūs*, and that all nouns ending in *u* have the regular genitive of the fourth declension, in *ūs*. Hence Mr. Arnold uniformly gives this as the correct form. For a full discussion of this point consult the *Preface to Freund's Latin Dictionary*.—A. E. D.

in 6, note a,) are thrown away. But to this table there are two exceptions:—

- (1) The *case-endings* (or '*terminations*') of nouns of the second in *er*, are added on thus: *e* is *dropped*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. *agr-um*. (Sometimes, however, the *e* is kept; as *puer*, Acc. *puer-um*.)
- (2) The *terminations* of the *third* are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the nominative being *lapis*.
- (3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be got from the *genitive* by throwing away '*is*.'

¶ Let the learner here turn to the *Accidence*, p. 128, where are examples of a noun in every declension given out in full; and let him master these thoroughly before proceeding further.

Exercise 1.

[*Obs. m., f., n., stand for masculine, feminine, and neuter. G. stands for genitive.*]

- 11 Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

VOCABULARY 1.

Crown,
Island,
Friend,
Umpire,
Leaf,
Garden,
Law,
Chariot,
Face,
Dust,
Time,
Oak,
Horn,

corōna
insūla
amicus, *G. amici*
arbiter, *G. arbitr-i*
folium, *G. folii*
hortus, *G. horti*
lex, *G. lēg-is*
currus, *G. currūs*
facies, *G. faciēi*
pulvis, *G. pulvēr-is*
tempus, *G. tempōr-is*, neuter
quercus, *G. quercūs*
cornu

KEY-WORDS.*

(*coronation.*)
(*insular.*)
(*amicable.*)
(*arbitration.*)
(*foliage.*)
(*horticulture.*)
(*legal.*)
(*curricule.*)

(*pulverize.*)
(*temporal.*)

(*cornucopia.*)

* That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a *key* or help to their meaning.

Exercise 6.

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husbandman was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.


Servus mortem sperābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnabat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

Lesson 7.

(Adjectives in us, er.)

35. VOCABULARY 7.

To finish,	fin-ire.	
Labor,	labor, <i>G.</i> labōr-is.	
Mother,	māter, <i>G.</i> matr-is	(maternal.)
Father,	pāter, <i>G.</i> patr-is	(paternal.)
To bury,	sepel-ire	(sepulture.)
Dead,	mortuus, mortua, mortuum.	
Son,	filius, <i>G.</i> filii	(filial.)
Snake,	anguis, anguis, <i>m.</i> (pronounced angwis.)	
To find,	repér-ire	(repertory.)
Money,	pecunia	(pecuniary.)
Sum-of-money, }		
Master,	{ magister, <i>G.</i> magistr-i, } a master who teaches } { dominus, <i>G.</i> i, a master } who owns }	(magisterial.) (domineer.)
To rouse-up, or }	excit-āre	(excitement.)
awaken, }		
Mine,	meus, mea, meum.	
Good,	bonus, bona, bonum.	
His, her, its, theirs,	suus, sua, suum; when the person whose the thing	
is, is the nominative to the verb.		

36.  Adjectives in *us, er*, have a *masculine*, a *feminine*, and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i*. (Decl. *ii*.)

— feminine — *a*; G. *æ*. (Decl. *i*.)

— neuter — *um*; G. *i*. (Decl. *ii*.)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus*, (whose *fem.* is *bona*; *neut.* *bonum*.) if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*;^f and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken.^g

38. Mulier ancillam suam excitat.
The woman maid her awakens.

Obs. Except with these little words *meus*, *suus*, &c., the adjective generally stands before its substantive. 'Bonus puer,' a good boy.

[Ancillam suam:—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

Exercise 7.

39. The father buries (his) dead son. The husband-man finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labor. The girl was finishing her labor. The master will

^f See 9, b.

^g TABLE by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined.

I. DECL.	All <i>feminine</i> , except <i>poeta</i> , (poet,) and other designations of <i>men</i> .		
II. DECL.	{ us, er, masculine:	except <i>humus</i> , <i>dōmus</i> , (<i>fem.</i> .) and a few more.	
	{ um, neuter.		
IV. DECL.	{ us, masculine,	except <i>mānus</i> , (<i>fem.</i> .) and a few more.	
	{ u, neuter.		
V. DECL.	es, <i>fem.</i> (<i>Dix</i> is masculine, but sometimes <i>fem.</i> in singular.)		
III. DECL.	Masc. term.	Fem. term.	Neut. term.
	ER, OR, OS,	do, go, io,	c, a, t, e, l, n,
	ES increasing.*	as, is, aus,	ar, ur, us,
	o, when not do, go, io.	x,	(But <i>is</i> with long <i>u</i> ,
		es not increasing,	in words of more than
		s after a consonant.	one syll. is <i>fem.</i>)

Obs. Masc. endings are in *capitals*; *fem.* in *common type*; *neut.* in *Italics*.—There are many exceptions in the *third*. See Accidence, on the Genders of Substantives, p. 127.

* That is, having in the genitive a syllable more than in the nominative.

*ticular root,*¹ that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first, second, and fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv, ū,* and *iv,* respectively, to the root of the present.

<i>Thus from</i>	am-āre	mon-ēre	aud-īre
<i>(Root of present)</i>	am-	mon-	aud-
<i>(Root of perfect)</i>	amāv-	monŭ-	audiv-

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect, Pluperfect* and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

<i>Perfect,</i>	it,	} to be added to the root of the perfect.
<i>Pluperfect,</i>	erat,	
<i>Future perfect,</i>	erit,	

53. Find the roots of the perfect for cant-āre, terr-ēre, doc-ēre, sepel-īre.

Exercise 11.

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The Christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price.

Juravērat. Agricōla aravērit. Vulpes terruērit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavērat. Sērvus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepelivērat. Magnam poētæ sapientiam parvi æstimavit. Veram virtutem magni æstimavērat.

Lesson 12.

55. VOCABULARY 11.

Bad,	mālus. Evil, malum, (<i>neut. adj.</i>)
Something,	aliquid, (<i>n.</i>)

¹ By a *root* is here meant that part of a word which is found in all the cases or tenses spoken of.

How much,	quantus, quanta, quantum	(quantity.)
Pleasure,	voluptas, G. voluptātis	(voluntary.)
Lose,	amittere.	
Unwilling,	invitus, (to be translated, 'unwillingly.')	
Figure,	figūra.	
To have,	habere.	
Stability,	stabilitas.	
To condemn,	damnare.	
Unlearned,	indoctus.	
Industry,	industria.	

56. Figūra nihil habet stabilitatis.
The figure nothing has of stability, (has no stability.)

Aliquid temporis { something of time. (Lat.)
 { (some time.) (Eng.)
 Multum boni^k { much of good. (Lat.)
 { (much good.) (Eng.)
 Quantum voluptātis^l { how much of pleasure. (Lat.)
 { (how much pleasure.) (Eng.)

57. (Eng.) He does it *unwillingly*, (adv.)
 (Lat.) He *unwillingly* does it, (adj.)

Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the *root of perfect* from hab-ēre, vit-āre, dilani-āre, laud-āre.

58. The boy will lose *some time*. *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose!^m The figure had *no stability*. He avoided *much evil*. The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly.²

Servus viam monstr-av-erat. Puer mortem tim-u-it. Dominus servum suum excit-av-erat. Aliquid temporis invitus amittet. Christiānus avaritiam damnat. Quantum habet voluptātis sapientia! Avaritia nihil habet veræ voluptātis. Quantum voluptātis hab-u-erit!

^k ✂ Boni, mali, &c., (the genitives of *bonus, malus*.) are here used as substantives.

^l ✂ Neuter adjectives are often followed by a *genitive case*.

These adjectives are generally such as relate to *quantity*; *indefinite numerals*, &c.

^m Oss. After '*how much*' the present with '*does*' is used, and the *nominative case* stands between the auxiliary verb and the verb.

tianus neminem violabit. Fideles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

Lesson 21.

87. The *Imperative* may be got from the *infinitive* by throwing away *re*, (*amā, monē, regē, audī.*)

88. 'Not' with *imperatives* is *nē*,

A 'non' is hateful then to see.

Crabrōnes *nē* irrīta.

Hornets do-not irritate. (Do not irritate hornets.)

89. VOCABULARY 18.

It is,	est.	
Wasp,	vespa.	
To irritate,	irrītāre.	
Hornet,	crabr-o, ōnis.	
Never,	nunquam.	
Useful, profitable,	ūtil-is	(utility.)

Exercise 21.

[The 'do' before 'not' is only the *auxiliary* verb belonging to the following verb: thus, "do not shut" is the same as "shut not."⁹]

90. Do not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time*.⁴ The figure will have *no stability*.⁴ Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

[OBS. The 'do' of the *imperative* must be put before 'not'; just as if 'nē' were to be translated 'do not.']

Patriæ tuæ leges *nē* viōla. Veram anīmi* magnitudinem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*⁷ fidem suam servāre.

* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adjective and substantive

97. The remaining cases of the plural.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

	1. 2.	3. 4.	5.	
Dat. }	is,	ibūs,	ēbūs.	(In the <i>fourth</i> it is some-
Abl. }				times ūbus.)

98. VOCABULARY 20.

To divide,	divīd-ĕre.	
Part,	pars, partis. Gender? (p. 24, g.)	
Three,	{ tres, <i>neut.</i> tria, (declined regularly: gen. <i>ium</i> .)	
A man,	{ vir,* G. viri, (declined like a noun of second.)	
To accuse,	accūsāre.	
Theft,	furtum	(furtive.)
Bribery,	ambītus, G. ūs.	
To acquit,	absolvĕre	(absolve; absolution.)
Treachery,	proditio, G. ōnis.	
To death,	may be translated by <i>capitis</i> , ('of the head.')	
Into,	in, with the accusative.	
Because,	quia.	
Always,	semper.	

99.	Puer	eximĭā	pulchritudinē
	A boy	of singular	beauty.
	Caium	proditōnis ^e	accūsant.
	Caius	of treachery	they accuse.

100. Obs. Where we describe a person or thing by a *substantive* and *adjective* governed by 'of,' the Romans used either the *genitive* or the *ablative*.

101. (Eng.) To condemn a person to death.
(Lat.) To condemn a person of the head,^f (*capitis*.)

Exercise 23.

102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (the things) into three parts. He

* *Homo*, G. *hominis*, and *vir* are both 'man;' but *homo* is 'man' as opposed to other animals; that is, 'a human being;' whereas '*vir*' is 'man' as opposed to 'woman.'

When '*men*' means 'human beings,' '*men*' generally, (including both sexes,) it should be translated by *homines*.

When '*man*' is used contemptuously, it should also be translated by '*homo*,' because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a human being.

When '*man*' is used respectfully, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by '*vir*,' because *man* is superior to *woman*.

^e Verbs of accusing, acquitting, and condemning, take a *genitive* of the charge.

As transitive verbs they, of course, take an accusative of the person accused.

^f We may suppose that it was originally 'to condemn a person to the loss of the head,' or rather 'to a punishment of the head.'

will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do *not* divide the food. Balbus, a man of *the greatest virtue*, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating (all) things with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ¹¹⁾ vivit. Balbum ambitūs accusavērant. *Quantum cibi*⁴ amittunt! Balbum proditionis absolvent. Balbum *capītis* damnābunt. Hiēme^{9, b)} ursi in antris dormiunt. Triennium^{9, c)} Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus *Caium* accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditiōnis accusavērat. Portas urbis clausērat. Balbi est, omnia in tres partes dividēre. Facile est saltare. Nunquam utile est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

Lesson 24.

Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by *lengthening the vowel* of the present: as *ēd-ere*, *ēd*.

104. If the vowel of the present is *ā*, the root of the perf. will have *ē*. Thus *cāp-ere*, *cēp*.

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute.

Thus frang-ēre, frāg, frēg.	(break.)
rump-ēre, rup, rūp.	(burst; break through.)
vinc-ēre, vic, vīc.	(conquer.)

106. VOCABULARY 21.

Buy,	ēm-ēre, r. ēm	(pre-emption.)
Take, }	cāp-ere, r. cēp.	
Receive, }	brāchium.	
Arm,		

113. a) If 'it' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the *perfect*.
 b) If 'it' has *u* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the *perfect*.^{*}
 c) If the first two consonants of the root are the same, the tense is the *perfect*.
 (Thus 'tetendit,' 'momordit,' is the *perfect*.)
 d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is *very often* the *perfect*.

114. VOCABULARY 23.

Some verbs that form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is *redoubling*.

Bite,	mord-ère, r. mōmord	(re-morse.)
Hang, (neut.),	pend-ère, r. pēpend	(sus-pense.)
Shear, shave,	tond-ère, r. tōtond	(tonsure.)
<hr/>		
Shoulder,	humērus, G. i.	
Beard,	barba	(barber.)
Sheep,	ovis, G. ovis.	
Play,	de-glūb-ère, (see 75.)	
Shepherd,	past-or, G. ōris	(pastor.)
Wolf,	lūpus, G. i.	
From,	ab, governing the ablative.	

Exercise 26.

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have surrounded the city with walls. They have *unwillingly* offended against the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris⁷ est tondere oves, non deglubere. Sagittae ab humero pependērunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totondit. Pastores agricolae riserunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordērit. Boni canis non est,⁷ oves mordere. Tonde oves; ne deglube. Servus portas urbis clausērit. Puēri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. Lusciniae colorem mutabunt. Autumno lusciniæ colorem suum mutavērunt.

^{*} This is *certain*, in the case of *av-it*, *iv-it*. But *arguit*, *congruit*, *imbuit*, *statuit*, &c., are of the *present*.

125. VOCABULARY 25.

Happy,	{ felix, ^r G. felic-is	(<i>felicity.</i>)
	{ beatus	(the <i>beatitudes</i>)
Contented,	contentus, ^s governs the <i>abl.</i>	
Worthy,	dignus, ^s governs <i>abl.</i>	(<i>dignity.</i>)
Unworthy,	indignus, ^s governs <i>abl.</i>	(<i>indignity</i>)
Endued,	præditus, ^s	
Relying on,	fretus, ^s	
Strength,	vires, G. virium, &c. Plural of <i>vis</i> .	
A little,	parvum, <i>neut. adj.</i> used as a substantive	
Free,	liber, ^s libera, liberum	(<i>liberty.</i>)
Never,	nunquam.	

126. Terra est rotunda.

The earth is round.(Rotunda nom. fem. to agree with *terra.*)

Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.

*Very many stars suns are (are suns.)**Exercise 28.*

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*⁴ (thing.) Balbus, relying on his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127.* (What does *luce* come from?—See 84, (I) a.)

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendidit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est. Improborum est⁷ malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

^r *Beatus* relates more to *true, inward* happiness than *felix*, which means *successful in one's undertakings, &c.*

^s { Dignus, indignus, præditus, contentus, fretus, liber, &c., govern the *ablative*.

That is, the *abl.* follows them without a preposition: so that the English '*with, from,*' &c., must not be translated after them.

Lesson 30.

Subjunctive Verb.

131.	1.	2.	3.	4.	} The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an <i>s</i> before the <i>t</i>
PRESENT (R. ^v)	ē̃t,	ēāt,	āt,	īāt.	
IMPERFECT (R.)	ārēt,	ērēt,	ērēt,	irēt.*	
Perfect (r. ^v)	ērīt.				
Pluperfect (r.)	issēt.				

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the subjunctive present is to be rendered, '*he, &c. may —*;' without *ut*, it must be '*let him —, &c.,*' or '*may he —, &c.*'

133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative*, takes *nē* for '*not*,' (*ne putet, do not let him think.*)

Exercise 30.

134. Write down in Latin: That^w he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

Translate: Floreat. Ut florēret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irritet. Ut irrītet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingēret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scripsisset. Ut scribēret. Plācet pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepeliret. Sepeliat filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapēre discant.

Lesson 31.

135. ¶ The infinitive in English often expresses a *purpose*: but the infinitive in Latin *never* does.

^v R. means with root of present.

r. ——— root of perfect.

* Obs. The 3d sing. of the imperfect subjunctive may be formed from the infinitive by adding *t*.

^w 'Ut' is 'that.'

- (Eng.) I am come to see you.
 (Lat.) I am come that I may see you.
 (Eng.) I came to see you.
 (Lat.) I came that I might see you.*

136. ¶ The English infin. expressing a *purpose* may be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive.

137. The *imperfect* subjunctive must be used, when the verb is of a *past* tense ;^x the *present* follows the other tenses.

138. ¶ The 'perfect with have' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something *has been done* in a *still present* period of time) is considered a *present* tense, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.^y

Obs. Neuter verbs of *motion* form their perfect definite act. with 'am : ' so that 'He is come' = 'He has come,' and is followed by *pres. subjunctive*.^z

139. VOCABULARY 27.

	R.	r.	
To eat,	ēd-ēre,	ēd (103)	(edible.)
To come,	vēn-īre,	vēn (103)	(ad-vent.)
To learn,	disc-ēre,	didīc,* (113, c.)	
To read,	lēg-ere, lēg, (103.)		

140. (1) Vēnit ut portas claudat.
 He is coming that *the gates* *he may shut.*
 (*He is coming to shut the gates.*)
- (2) Vēnit ut portas claudēret.
 He came that *the gates* *he might shut*
 (*He came to shut the gates.*)
- (3) Vēnit ut portas claudat.
 He is come that *the gates* *he may shut.*
 (*He is come to shut the gates.*)

Exercise 31.

[What tense is 'he was come?' 138, z.]

141. He will come to surround the boy's head with a garland. He was come to surround the girl's head with a garland. He came to irritate the wasps. They

^x That is, of the *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect*.

^y It is just so in English :

I write, or am writing,	} that I may, &c.
I shall write,	
I have written,	
I was writing,	} that I might, &c.
I wrote,	
I had written,	

^z So too 'was come' is the pluperf.

* The syllable prefixed is called a *reduplication*.

were come to pull-down Sulla's house. He was come to give me an estate. They had come to condemn me to death.⁸ Do not shut the gate. He was come to raise the greatest forces he could.⁹ Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn^a to read. The boy has learned to play.

[Render *ut* and the *subjunctive* by the *infinitive*.]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis claudat. Vēnit,^b *ut* quam maxīmas⁹ copias compāret. Lēgit, *ut* discat. Edit, *ut* vivat. Edit, *ut* vivēret. Non edunt, *ut* vivant; sed vivunt, *ut* edant. Romæ plurīmi vivunt, *ut* edant. Veniat Caius, *ut* epistolam suā manu scribat. Cantet^c puella. Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, *ut* Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, *ut* me audiat. Venerunt, *ut* me audiant. Venerunt, *ut* te audirent. Edunt, *ut* vitam conservent.

Lesson 32.

142. After '*such*,' '*so*,' 'of *such* a kind,' &c., '*that*' must be translated by '*ut*,' and the verb after '*that*' must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin, though in English it is in the *indicative*.

143. VOCABULARY 28.

So great,	tantus.	
Mountain,	mons, mont-is, mas.	
Highest,	summus	(summit.)
Top of,	summus,	} in agreement with their subst.
Middle, or midst of,	medius,	
Snow,	nix, niv-is.	Gender ?
Alps,	Alpes, Alpium, &c.	
Cold,	frig-ūs, ōris.	Gender ?
Not-yet,	nondum.	(frigid.)
Fish,	piscis, G. pisc-is, mas.	(piscatory.)
Pavement,	pavimentum.	
Wine,	vinum	(vinous fermentation.)
Preserve,	conservare	(conservative.)
To swim,	nātāre.	
To melt,	lique-scere, licu	(liquid.)

^a Disco is followed by the *infinitive*, (not by *ut* with the *subjunctive*.)

^b Obs. When the *present subjunctive* follows a *perfect*, the *perfect* must be translated by '*has*,' or, if it is a verb of motion, by '*is*,' because the use of the *present* proves it to be the *perfect definite*. See 137.

Exercise 33.

When the answer 'no' is expected, it will be added thus: [No.]

☞ The 'to' of the infin. is omitted after *can, may, might, &c.*, and *see, hear, feel, bid, dare, make.*

154. Does he live to eat? [No.] Does not he eat to live? The husbandman has scattered seeds. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. They *are come*²⁹⁾ to condemn²⁸⁾ you *to death*.⁸ Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?¹⁰ [No.] The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? Are you shearing the sheep?

[In rendering, omit the *nē* or *num*, but make the sentence a *question*.]

[In a *question*, the *auxiliary verb* must stand before the nominative case: and the form '*do—does, did, did,*' must be used for the *present* and *perfect* respectively. (The *perfect definite* must still be translated by *have, has.*)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immerserant. Periculōsum est, *hiēme*¹²⁾ se in flumen immergēre. Puer se in flumen immergat.³⁰⁾ *Agricolārum est*⁷ semina auctumno^{9, b)} spargēre. Nonnē in *summis Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? Avis in *summā quercu* nidum construxerat. Scripsitnē Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adpersit. Num rex portas urbis suā manu claudet? Nonnē boni est pastōris⁷ tondēre oves, non deglubere?

Lesson 34.

Root of supine.

155. There are two *su-pines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. ☞ The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose*: it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active*, (*amātum, to love.*)

⁸ Hence the verb that follows *can, could, &c.*, is in the *infinitive* mood; because 'I can see,' is the same as 'I am able to see.'

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive*.

But it may be Englished by the *infin. act.* when that gives better English.^b Both supines are *really* active: *factum* is ('for') doing: '*factu*, 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the *root of the supine*.¹

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked by *ç*.) ends in *t*; sometimes in *s*.

159. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the *root of supine* is regularly obtained by adding

1. 2. 4.
āt, *īt*, *īt*, to the roots of the present.
(*amāt*) (*monīt*) (*audīt*.)

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s*, (especially to the *t* sounds.)

160. Oss. Any *p* sound before *t* is *pt*, (or *pt* = *pt*, or *bt*.)

Any *k* sound ————— *ct*, (or *ct* = *ct*, *gt*, or *gut*.)

Hence *scrib-tum*, *reg-tum*, must be written *scriptum*, *rectum*. Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s*. (See 96, 150.)

161. VOCABULARY 30.

To forage, (supine,)	pabulātum.
To fetch water, (supine,)	aquātum.
To lie down,	cubītum, (sup. from <i>cubāre</i> .)
To go to bed; to go to roost,	cubītum ire.
To send,	mitt-ēre, r. mīs, (for mīt-s; p. mīs) (re-mīt.)
To go,	ire. ^k
To go a hunting,	venātum ire, (venātum, sup. to hunt.)
To go away,	ab-ire, ^k r. abi.
To return,	red-ire, ^k r. redī.
Hen,	gallina.
Evening,	vesp-er, G. ēris (vespers.)
Legion,	lēgi-o, G. ōnis. Gender?
Fourth,	quartus.
Pleasant,	jūcundus.

162. Mittit legātos pacem petītum.
He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for.

^b See 163.

¹ It would be far better to give the *root of the supine*, than a fictitious form.

^k *Ire* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. IV: p. II.

Indicative.		Subjunctive.		The participle, which will be wanted presently, is <i>iens</i> , G. <i>euntis</i> , &c. Gerunds, <i>eundi</i> , &c.
Pres.	it.	eunt.	eat.	
Imperf.	ibat.		iret.	
Fut.	ibit.			

The compounds *ab-ire*, *red-ire*, are conjugated exactly in the same way, (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms,) but they generally drop *n* from the root of the perf (*redi-erit*, *redi-isset*, &c.; not *rediv-erit*, *rediv-isset*.)

1.	2.	3.	4.
andus,	endus,	endus,	iendus.

- 165.* The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ing*.
 The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed, en, t, &c.*
 The participle in *us* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*. a crime *to be abhorred*.)
 The participle in *rus* must be translated by '*about to (write;)*' or, '*going to (write,)*'

166. VOCABULARY 31.

R.	r.	p.	
frang,	frēg,	fract	(for fragt.)
sparg,	spars,	spars	(for sparga.)
adsparg,	adspers,	adspers	(for adspersg.)
claud,	claus,	claus	(for clauda.)
immers,	immers,	immers	(for immergs.)
rump,	rūp,	rupt	

Exerciseⁿ 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded.
 Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Immersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semīna spargenda.
 Agricōla sparsūrus semīna. Violatūrus legem. Claudens portas. Porta clausa. Semīna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersurus.

Lesson 36.

168. VOCABULARY 32.

(Words that are construed like *proper names of towns*.)

On the ground,	hūmi.
At home,	dōmi, fem.
At my house,	dōmi meæ, (At his own house, <i>dōmi suæ</i> .)

* First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *cing*, (159, 160,) and to *frag*, (see 105, 159, and 160;) (2) by adding *s* to *merg*, *sparg*, *claud*, (see 159;) and (3) from the roots of *viol-āre*, *habit-āre*, (by 159.)

Folia nondum decidērant. Puer *Romam* mittendus est. Balbus nec domi nec militiæ mecum fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavērit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus *Romam* rediērunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingēret. Sacerdos, quum aras sanguine adpersisset, abiit.

[Observe: In rendering an *ablative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first, *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that compounded with '*being*.'

But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with '*having*') governing the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning. Example: "*fracto pueri brachio*," the arm of the boy *being broken*: this is the same in meaning with, "the boy having broken his arm." Either form of expression may be used.]

Fracto puēri *brachio*, abii. Alexander, victo Dario, rediit. Avis, constructo in *summā quercu* nido, canit. *Violātis* patriæ *lēgibus*, vitā²⁴ indignus est. *Fundo* in tres partes *divīso*, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adpersā sanguine arā, abiit. Caius, ruptis vincūlis, evolavit. *Scriptā* epistolā, abiit.

Lesson 37.

Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andi,	endi,	endi,	iendi.

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the participle in *dus*.)

174. The *gerund* is translated by the '*participial substantive*' in '*ing*.'

✎ When what is in *form* the participle in *ing*, governs or is governed, but has nothing to agree with, it is the *participial substantive*.

* In translating two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to borrow a '*not*' from them for the verb, and then to render them by *either—or*, instead of *neither—nor*.

Thus, 'he was with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become, 'he was not with me *either* yesterday *or* the day before.'

rant, ut Sullæ domum evertērent. Eversā Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt? Puer cupidus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrēpat a timendo confidēre.

Lesson 38.

Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus, (Eng.) The intention of writing a letter.
(Lat.) Consilium scribendi epistolam.
(or) Consilium scribendæ^u epistolæ.

181. Thus then, '*epistolā scribendā*' may be declined throughout.

Sing.

- N. Epistolā scribendā, a letter to be written.
G. epistolæ scribendæ, of writing a letter.
D. epistolæ scribendæ, to or for writing a letter.
Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, to write a letter, (or, for writing a letter.)
Abl. epistolā scribendā, by writing a letter.

Plur.

- N. epistolæ scribendæ, letters to be written.
G. epistolārum scribendarum, of writing letters.
D. epistolis scribendis, to or for writing letters.
Acc. (ad) epistolas scribendas, to write letters, (or, for writing letters.)
Abl. epistolis scribendis, by writing letters.

182. VOCABULARY 34.

[The forms following a verb are r. and p.]

Book,	liber, libri	(library.)
Very fond,	studiōsus.	
Plato,	Plato, G. Platōnis.	
To retain,	{ re-tin-ēre, rētīnū, retent { (re, back; tenēre, hold.)	(retentive.)
Barbarous,	barbārus.	
Custom,	consuetūd-o, G. īnis. Gender?	
To sacrifice, ^v	im-mōlare	(immolate.)
Fonder,	cupīdi-or, G. ōris.	
To buy,	ēm-ēre, ēm, empt.	
To snatch; seize, ^w	{ arripēre, arripu, arrept, (ad, to; { rapere, snatch.)	

^u The real meaning of 'consilium epistolæ scribendæ' is, 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

^v Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola salsa*) on the victim's head: from *in*, on, and *mola*.

^w This verb, though of the third, follows the fourth in the imperfect, &c., as will be explained below. See note x.

Opportunity,
To practise,
Desire,
To rule,
War,
To carry on ; wage,
Time,

occaf-o, G. ōnis. *Gender ?*
exercēre.
cupīdit-as, ātis
rēgēre, rex, rect
bellum.
gēr-ēre, gess, gest.
temp-ūs, ōris. *Gender ?*

(*cupidity.*)
(*di-rect.*)

(*temporal.*)

Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond of *writing letters*. Demosthēnes was very-fond of *hearing Plato*. In the times of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom of *sacrificing men*. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. Do not lose the opportunities of *practising virtue*. Nature has given us a desire of *seeing the truth*. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. Timotheus was skilful⁽³³⁾ in governing a state.

[Obs. Any case of the *partic. in dus*, except the nominative, must be rendered by the same case of the *participial substantive*; and the substantive it agrees with, must stand as the accusative after it. Thus. "Balbus seized every opportunity of practising virtue."]

Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniā⁽²¹⁾ ēmērat? Balbus omnem occasiōnem exercendae virtūtis arripēbat. Multi cupidiores sunt emendōrum librōrum, quam legendōrum. Cæsar belli gerendi peritus fuit. Nonne mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) detēgunt?

Lesson 39.

184. OBS. After 'is,' 'are,' and the other parts of the verb 'to be,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used as a participle of the future passive, to signify *duty, necessity, &c.*

185. Hence, what is in form the *passive infinitive*, is to be translated by the *participle in dus*, when it follows 'is,' 'are,' &c.

186. Virtus colenda est.
Virtue to-be-cultivated is.
[Virtue is to be cultivated.]

☞ The agent, or person by whom, is put in the

Lesson 42.

201. 'Is,' properly 'that,' is used for *he, she, it, plur. they,*^b when they do not mean the *same person or thing* that the nominative case means.

202. 'Is' has neuter *id.*

The other cases are formed *as if* from '*eus, ea, eum,*' making the gen. *eius*, written *ejus*, and dat. *ei*.

But in the plural, the *nom. masc.* and the *dative* are generally *ii*, and *iis*, instead of *eis*.^c

203. VOCABULARY 38.

Long,	diu. Longer, <i>diutius</i> .
To sin,	peccāre.
To recall,	revocāre.
King,	rex, rēgis.
Literature,	litēre, (plur.)
So,	tam.
So great,	tantus.
Multitude,	multitūd-o, G. Inls.
To count,	nūmerāre.
Star,	stella, (con-stella-tion.)

204. Si diutius vixisset, neminem habuisset parem.
If longer he had lived, nobody he would have had equal.

(*If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.*)

205. OBS. ¶ After 'if' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given me⁽²³⁾ an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be

^b Is, 'that person' = *he*.

Ea, 'that female' = *she*.

Id, 'that thing' = *it, &c.*

^c Hence the cases are,

Is, eā, id: G. ejus: D. ei: Acc. eum, eam, id: Abl. eo, eā, eo.

Plur. ii, eā, eā: G. eōrum, eārum, eōrum: D. and Abl. iis, (or eis:) Acc. eos, eas, eā. See Accidence, p. 146.

OBS. When *his, her, its; theirs*, are to be translated by '*is,*' they are translated by the genitive.

When *his, her, its; theirs*, are translated by *suius, suus* must agree with its substantiv.

Ejus libri, his books; eōrum libri, their books; sui libri, his or their books

- (a) The *future infinitive active* is made up, as in English, of 'to be,' with the *future participle active*.

In the *passive*, the *future infinitive* is made up of the *supine* with *iri*.

- (b) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre*, *am-au-isse*; *amatūrum esse*, *amātum esse*, and *amātum iri*.

225. ¶ The infinitives made up of *two words* are called *compound infinitives*.

¶ The *participles* of the compound infinitives* must *agree* with their substantives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*.

- (a) Videt te esse beātum
He sees that you are happy.
- (b) Sperat se victūrum esse.
He hopes that he shall live.

226. Two English sentences, joined by the conjunction 'that,' are often made *one* Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive*.

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,

- (1.) take no notice of 'that';
- (2.) translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative*;
- (3.) translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the *same tense*.

Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had^{*} come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.² It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed *to Athens*,

* They are set down in the *acc. mase*.

278. (Eng.) The more he teaches, the more he learns.
 (Lat.) *By how much* more he teaches, *by so much* more he learns.
 (or) *By what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. ¶ 'The'—'the' before two comparatives must be translated by 'quanto'—'tanto,' or by 'quo'—'eo.'

280. Obs. The *tanto* or *eo* goes with that assertion which follows from the other.

If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with 'if,' and let the 'if' sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.

- (a) Thus in the example, (278,) his *learning* more will follow, or be the consequence, of his *teaching* more.
 'If' he teaches much, *he will learn more than he otherwise would.*

Exercise 55.

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo sæpe salubrior est. Quanto tempus est felicius, tanto brevius esse videtur. Quo plura habent homines, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccare. Juvēni parandum est; senī utendum. Nē jures. Jurasne?

Lesson 56.

282. VOCABULARY 50.

[The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective.]

<i>Facile,</i>	easily, (from <i>facilis</i> , easy :) <i>facilius</i> , more easily.
<i>Cito,</i>	quickly, (from <i>citus</i> , quick :) <i>citius</i> , more quickly.
<i>Bark,</i>	cortex, corticis, <i>m.</i>
<i>To cover, surround,</i>	ob-ducere, dux, duct.
<i>Safe,</i>	tutus.
<i>Virtuous, upright,</i>	honestus. Virtuously, <i>honeste</i> .
<i>Courageously,</i>	fortiter, (comparative, <i>fortius</i> .)

283. (Eng.) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.
 (Lat.) I ploughed it three times, *by which*[†] it might produce a *better* crop

284. (a) When '*that*' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.

- (b) '*That*' with comparatives and '*the*,'
 By '*quo*' may best translated be.

285. (Eng.) Some persons think.
 (Lat.) There are who think, (sunt qui putent.)
 (Eng.) Some persons thought.
 (Lat.) There were who thought, (erant qui putarent.)

Exercise 56.

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against^u enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, *that* he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, *that* he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, render *quo* by '*that*,' and put '*the*' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbōrum cortice obducuntur, *quo* sint a frigōre et calōre tutiōres. An licet Christiānis gloriæ servire? Omnibus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquere. Misere rēre nostri. Natūrā omnes propensi sumus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbāra consuetūdo immolandōrum hominū? Nonne mors quotidie ob oculos ponenda est?

Lesson 57.

English.
 287. I repent of my folly,
 I am vexed at my folly,
 I am ashamed of my folly,
 I pity the poor,
 I am weary of life,

Latin.
 It-repents me of my folly
 It-vexes me of my folly.
 It-shames me of my folly.
 It-pities me of the poor.
 It-irks me of life.

[†] Arāvi, &c., *quo* posset *meliores* fruges edere.

^u Adversus.

dissimum tum saluberrimum cūbū suppeditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catūlos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

Lesson 59.

298. Aut, or.

aut—aut ; vel—vel, *either—or*.

299. sive—sive } *either—or*.

seu—seu } *whether—or*.

vel is sometimes '*even*;' with superlatives, '*very*,' '*extremely*,' '*possible*.'

300. *Sive** is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one ; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

Exercise 59.

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites ! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigore rigent, aut uruntur calore. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morosus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese* vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, pœnas persolverunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplinâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calore nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus esto, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpōri prodest. Vel (299) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

* Sive is si-ve, '*or if*.' Thus, '*Caius sive Balbus*,' is '*Caius, or if you like Balbus*,' (for that is another name of his.)

* See *Accidence*, p. 144.

Lesson 60.

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an *opposition*.)

302. At, sed, autem, verum, vero, *but*.

Tamen, attāmen, { *yet ; but ; but yet.*

Veruntāmen,

Atqui, *but or now, (as used in reasoning.)*

Exercise 60.

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus ; *at* placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistōcles ; *at* Pericles idem non fecit. Si certum est^r facere, facias ; *verum* ne post confēras culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impediōr. Aut hoc aut illud est : non *autem* hoc (est ;) ergo (304) illud (est.) Absolutus est Caius ; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniā. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum : *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

Lesson 61.

304. Nam, namque, enim, *for.*

Igitur, ideo, *therefore.*

Ergo, *therefore, then.*

Itaque, *accordingly ; and so ;*

therefore.

Quare, *wherefore.*

Exercise 61.

305. In eā re prudentiā adjūtus est : *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summā æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnā nihil nobilius : nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus, tantum exercitum devicit.

^r Si certum est, (*if it is fixed,*) *if you are resolved.*

Magno² Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodēcim cum canibus venaticis exiērunt. Aristīdes æqualis fere fuit Themistōcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est ?) Nihil labōras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

Lesson 62.

306. ¶ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative*.

(a) But the '*perfect*,' when it answers to our *perfect* with '*have*,' is not considered a *past* tense.

307. 'Ut' with the *subjunct.* { (1) '*in order that*;' '*that*;' '*so that*.'
(2) the *infinitive*, (expressing the *purpose*.)
(3) '*as*,' with *infinitive*.
(4) '*granting that*;' '*although*.'
(5) '*that*' and carry '*not*,' (after to *fear*.)
(a) (Ut with the *indicative* is '*as*,' '*when*,' '*since*,' '*after*,' '*how*.')

(b) When *ut* introduces a *purpose*, the *subjunctive* verb will be rendered by '*may*,' '*might*.' When it signifies a *consequence*, (which it regularly does after '*so*,' '*such*,') the *subjunctive* verb is rendered by the *indicative*: but the *imperfect* by the English *perfect*.

Exercise 62.

Obs. *possim* (*is, it, &c.*) = '*can*' or '*may*.'
possem (*es, et, &c.*) = '*could*' or '*might*.'

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis *laudentur*. Stellarum *tanta* multitudo est, *ut* numerari *non possint*. In summis Alpibus^a tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

² Stare magno, to cost a man dear. Magno agrees with *pretio* (price) understood.

^a On the top of the Alps. *Summus, imus, medius, primus, extremus, reliquus, &c.*, agreeing with nouns, are generally rendered by *substantives*, followed by a *genitive* case. *Imus mons*, the bottom or foot of the mountain. *Reliqua Ægyptus*, the rest of Egypt. *Sapientia prima*, the beginning of wisdom. In *extremo tercio libro*, at the end of the third book.

- (a) Such verbs are *ask, doubt, try, know, not know*; it is *uncertain, &c.*
 (b) *Num, an, nē*, in a dependent sentence, are '*whether*;' and '*num*' does not imply that the answer '*no*' is expected.
 (c) *An* is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

Exercise 68.

320. *Quis enumeretⁿ artium multitudinem? Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. Dic mihi, quem sol nobis adferat usum. Nescimus, quid serus vesper advecturus sit.^o Quid futurum sit, nescimus. Quid vere nobis prosit,^p non semper intelligimus. Olim quæstio erat, num terra rotunda esset. Num ægrotum interrogabis, an sanari velit? Cogita tecum, an gratiam retuleris, quibus gratiam debes. Quæritur^a unquamne fuerint monocerotēs. Utrum^{*} velis, elige. Non me terrebis, quomīnus, utrum velim, eligam. Quid dicam nescio.*

Lesson 69.

321. In *double questions* either,

- { (1) the first is introduced by *num, utrum*, or the appended *nē*, and the second by *an, (or:)* or,
 (2) the first question has *no interrogative adverb*; the second, *an* or the appended *nē*.

Exercise 69.

322. (1) [*Direct.*] *Utrum^r major est sol, an minor, quam terra? Casunē mundus est effectus, an vi divinā? Num sol mobilis est, an immobilis? Sumusne mortales, an immortales? [Indirect or dependent.] Quæritur, unusne sit mundus an plures? Nihil rēfert,^a utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum.*

(2) [*Direct.*] *Uter est infelicior, cæcus an surdus? Utrum est pretiosius, aurum an argentum? [Indirect.]*

ⁿ Who can reckon up?

^o Will bring?

^p Quid vere prosit (prosum) nobis; what is really beneficial to us.

^q It is sought = it is a question, or a disputed point: monocerotes, unicorns.

^a Neut. of *uter*.

^r Is the sun . . ?

^{*} It makes no difference.

Stellarum numerus par^t *an* impar *sit*, incertum est. Hominibus prodesse^u natura jubet : servi liberine *sint*, quid refert ?^v Dic mihi, æstate^w *grandinet*, *an* hieme Multum interest,^x valentes imbecilline simus.

a. *Necne* in the second question is 'or not.'

Lesson 70.

323. (*Some conjunctions that always take the subjunctive.*)

Utinam, *would that*.

O si, (*O! if*), O! *that, would that*.

licet, *although*.

quasi, *tanquam, as if*.

dum, modo, dummodo, *provided; if only*.

quamvis, *however-much, however*.

Exercise 70.

Note.—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be rendered by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari *possit* ! *Utinam* ense nullus magistratus *egeat* ! O si quisque virtutem *colat* ! O si omnes *cogitent*, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam ! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, *licet sit* aliqua præsentis et præteriti. Improbis ita vivit, *quasi nesciat*, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. Nemo, *quamvis sit* locuples, aliorum ope carere potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, *dummodo* laborare *velint*, alat. Ita fac omnia, *tanquam spectet* aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, *ac si taceat*. *Utinam* hoc verum sit. Sic agis, *quasi* me ames.

^t Even : impar, odd.

^v What matters it, or, what does it signify whether, &c. ?

^w In the summer.

^u Prosum

^x It makes a great difference.

Exercise 71.

329. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. Hæ sunt divitiæ certæ, semper *permansuræ*. Sapiens bona semper *placitura* laudat. Omnes aliud⁷ *agentes*, aliud *simulantes*⁸ impröbi sunt. PISISTRATUS HOMERI libros, *confûsos* antea, disposuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrûlus tacere nequit⁹ sibi *commissa*, (7.) Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda*, aut vituperat *laudanda*.

Lesson 72.

330. Render the participles in the following Exercise by verbs with 'when,' 'as.'

- (1) *ridens*, { *when he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.
 { *as he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.

331. In a sentence with *when*, we often omit the auxiliary verb: hence

- (2) *ridens* may be construed '*when laughing*.'

332. If the participle stands alone, '*he*,' '*they*,' '*a man*,' '*one*,' '*men*,' &c., must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

- (3) *ridenti*, { *when he is* *laughing*.
 { *when one is* *laughing*.

- (4) *ridentibus*, *when men* (or *they*) *are laughing*.

Exercise 72.

333. Leo *esuriens* rugit. XERXES a Græcis *victus* in Persiam refûgit. *Esurienti* (3) *gratior est cibus*. *Su-*

⁷ The first *aliud* must be construed '*one thing*;' the second, '*another*.'

⁸ Put in a '*but*' before *simulantes*.

⁹ *Nequeo*.

Lesson 77.

343. Render the following participles by verbs, and place 'and' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be rendered by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) Ridens *he laughs*, exclamat *and exclaims*.

(2) Ridens *he laughed*, exclamavit *and exclaimed*.

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum* lepōrem, *he has seized* the hare, lacerat, *and is mangling* it.

Exercise 77.

344. Jussis divinis *obediens* virtuti *studet*. CRÆSUS, a Cyro *victus*, regno *spoliatus est*. Troja, equi lignei ope capta, incendio *delēta est*. Persæ mortuos cerā *circumlitos*^h condunt. Grues, quum loca calidiora *petentes* maria *transmittunt*, triangūli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsumⁱ non accidisset, si *quiescens* legibus *paruissem*. Cum legionibus *profectus*^k celeriter *adereo*. TITUS MANLIUS Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum *cæsum*, torque spoliavit. *Comprehensum* hominem Romam *ducēbant*, (3.) Mulier ALCIBIADEM suā veste *confectum* cremavit.

Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be rendered *without*; the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

non without, ridens *laughing*.

non without, { amatus *being loved*.
 { amatus *loving him*.

^h From *circumlinere*.

ⁱ Render *ipse* by *even*.

^k *Profectus*.

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. To think nothing of.	To reckon at nothing, (<i>nihilî ducere</i> or <i>facere</i> .)
2. To value highly. ^a	To value at a high price, (<i>magni estimare</i> .)
3. { To think little of. ^b { To hold cheap.	To value at a little price, (<i>parvi estimare</i> .)
4. No stability.	Nothing of stability, (<i>nihil stabilitatis</i> .)
Some time.	Something of time, (<i>aliquid temporis</i> .)
Much good.	Much of good, (<i>multum boni</i> .)
How much pleasure.	How much of pleasure, (<i>quantum voluntatis</i> .)
3 ^c Hence 'no,' 'some,' (when they denote quantity, not number.)	
'much,' 'how much,' are to be translated by 'nihil,' 'aliquid,' 'multum,' 'quantum,' followed by the gen.	
5. He did it unwillingly.	He, unwilling, did it
6. It is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful
7. It is the part _____ duty _____ business _____ mark _____ character	It is of a wise man.
} of a wise man.	
8. To condemn a man to death.	To condemn a man of the head.
9. As many as possible.	As the most, (<i>quam plurimi</i> .)
_____ he can or could.	
The greatest possible.	As the greatest, (<i>quam maximus</i> .)
_____ he can or could.	[That is, 'as many as the most.' 'as great as greatest,' &c.]
10. On the top of the mountain.	On the mountain highest.
In the middle of the water.	In the water middle, (<i>in summo monte; in mediâ aquâ</i> .)
11. Is going to bed.	Is going to lie down, (<i>cubitum</i> , sup.)
12. It is hard to say.	It is hard in saying, (<i>difficile est dictu; supine</i> .)
13. While they were (are, &c.) playing.	During playing, (<i>inter ludendum</i> .)

^a To value very highly, (*maximi estimare*.)

^b The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the 'of,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

§ 8. TERMINATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>m. neut.</i>		<i>m.</i>	<i>neut. f.</i>
Nom.	ā	ūs, ēr um	various*	ūs	u es
Gen.	ae	i	is	ūs	ūi
Dat.	ae	ō	i	ui	ēi
Acc.	am	um um	em (im)	um	u em
Voc.	ā	ē, ēr um	like nom.	ūs	es
Abl.	ā	ō	ē (i)	ū	ē
<i>Plural.</i>					
Nom.	ae	i	ēs	ūs	uēs
Gen.	arum	orum	um or ium	uum	ūrum
Dat.	is	is	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs
Acc.	as	os	ēs	ūs	uēs
Voc.	ae	i	ēs	ūs	es
Abl.	is	is	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs

9. The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	..... a or the boy	Nom.	..... boys
Gen. of	..... a or the boy	Gen. of	..... the boys
Dat. to or for	..... a or the boy	Dat. to	..... the boys
Acc.	..... a or the boy	Acc.	..... the boys
Voc. O	..... boy	Voc. O	..... boys
Abl. with, from, in, or by..	a or the boy	Abl. with, from, in, or by....	the boys

10. OBS. That in *neuter* nouns the *accusative* is like the *nominative*, and that in the plural the *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* end in *ā*.

11. The *vocative* is always like the *nominative*, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ē*. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius*, *genius*. contract *ie* into *i*.; as, *Virgilius*, *Virgili*, &c.

12. In the third, *vis*, with *sitis*, *tussis*, *amussis*, and a few more, have Acc. *im*, Abl. *i* only.

Febris, *puppis*, *secūris*, *turris*, &c., prefer *im*, *i*.
Neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur. *ium*.

13. Besides the neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, the following classes of words generally make G. plur. *ium*:

* In repeating the Table, let the pupil say, "Nom., various,—generally not containing the unaltered root." See 42.

onus, onēris	a burden.	rūs, rūris	country.
os, oris, n.	mouth.	salūs, salūtis, f.	safety, health.
os, ossis, n.	bone.	sanguis, sanguinis, m.	blood.
pastor, ōris	a shepherd.	semen, īnis	seed.
pax, pācis	peace.	tempus, ōris	time.
pes, pēdis	a foot.	testis, c.	a witness.
pondus, ōris	weight.	timor, ōris	fear.
pons, pontis, m.	bridge.	urbs, urbis	city.
pulvis, ēris, m.	dust.	uxor, ōris	a wife.
quies, ētis, f.	rest, quiet.	venter, ventris	the belly.
rādix, radīcis	root.	vesper, ēris	the evening.
requies, (gen. ētis and ei : acc. requiem) f.	rest.	vōluntas, ātis	will, inclination.
		voluptas, ātis	pleasure.

§ 48. FOURTH DECLENSION.

49 Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine, except these feminines :

Acus	a needle.	Mānus	a hand.
Idus (pl.)	the Ides.	Porticus	a portico.
Dōmus	a house.	Ficus	a fig.
Tribus	a tribe.	Pēnus	a storehouse.

50. This declension is really a contracted form of the third :

gen. gradūs, *gradūs* ; acc. gradūem, *gradum* ; abl. gradue, *gradū*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

"Fruit."		"A Horn."	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. Fruct-us	N. Fruct-us	N. Corn-u	N. Corn-ūā
G. Fruct-ūs	G. Fruct-uum	G. Corn-ūs ¹	G. Corn-uum
D. Fruct-ni	D. Fruct-ibus	D. Corn-u	D. Corn-ious
A. Fruct-um	A. Fruct-us	A. Corn-u	A. Corn-ūā
V. Fruct-us	V. Fruct-us	V. Corn-u	V. Corn-ūā
A. Fruct-u	A. Fruct-ibus	A. Corn-u	A. Corn-ibus

51. In like manner decline,—

cantus	a song.	quercus	an oak.
currus	a chariot.	senātus	the senate.
exercitus	an army.	sensus	a sense, feeling.
fluctus	a wave.	sexus	a sex.
gēlu	ice.	sinus	a bosom.
gēnu	the knee.	sumptus	expense.
lācus	a lake.	tōnitrū	thunder.
luctus	grief.	tumultus	an uproar.
mānus	hand.	venātus	hunting.
mōtus	motion.	vēru	a spit.
portus	a port.	victus	food.
passus	a pace.	vultus	the countenance.

¹ The genit. of nouns in *u* of the fourth declension, was in *ūs*. See note, "First Latin Book," p. 16.

52. *Dŏmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth, and partly of the second declension. It is thus declined :

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Dŏmus</i>	N. <i>Dom-us</i>
G. <i>Dom-ūs or ū</i>	G. <i>Dom-uum or ōrum</i>
D. <i>Dom-ūī or ō</i>	D. <i>Dom-ibus</i>
A. <i>Dom-um</i>	A. <i>Dom-us or ōs</i>
V. <i>Domus</i>	V. <i>Dom-us</i>
A. <i>Dom-ō</i>	A. <i>Dom-ibus</i>

53. NOTE. *Domūs* in the genit. signifies of a house ; and *domi*, at home or of home.

§ 54. FIFTH DECLENSION.

55. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*. They are all feminine excepting *dies* ; which is masculine or feminine in the singular ; *masculine only* in the plural. Its compound *meridies* (noon) is masculine.

56. REM. The *e* of the gen. is *long*, when it follows a *vowel* ; *short*, when it follows a *consonant* ; *rēi, fidēi, faciēi*.*

EXAMPLES.

"A Thing."		"A Day."	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
N. <i>Res</i>	N. <i>Res</i>	N. <i>Di-ēs</i>	N. <i>Di-ēs</i>
G. <i>Rē-i</i>	G. <i>Rē-rum</i>	G. <i>Di-ēi</i>	G. <i>Di-ērum</i>
D. <i>Rē-i</i>	D. <i>Rē-bus</i>	D. <i>Di-ēi</i>	D. <i>Di-ēbus</i>
A. <i>Rem</i>	A. <i>Res</i>	A. <i>Di-ēm</i>	A. <i>Di-ēs</i>
V. <i>Res</i>	V. <i>Res</i>	V. <i>Di-ēs</i>	V. <i>Di-ēs</i>
A. <i>Re</i>	A. <i>Rē-bus</i>	A. <i>Di-ē</i>	A. <i>Di-ēbus</i>

57. In like manner decline,—

<i>acies</i>.....the edge or point of a thing ; line of battle.	<i>sānles</i> gore.
<i>facies</i>.....the face.	<i>sēries</i> an order or row.
<i>fīdes</i>.....faith.	<i>spēcies</i> .....appearance, form.
<i>glacies</i> .....ice.	<i>spes</i> .....hope.
<i>pernīcies</i> .....destruction.	<i>temperies</i> .....temperateness.

* See note, "First Latin Book," p. 25.

67. Most adjectives in *er* drop the *e* in declension:*Æger*, "sick."

<i>Sing.</i>		
N. <i>Æger</i>	<i>ægr-ā</i>	<i>ægr-um</i>
G. <i>Ægr-i</i>	<i>ægr-æ</i>	<i>ægr-i</i>
D. <i>Ægr-ō</i>	<i>ægr-æ</i>	<i>ægr-o</i>
A. <i>Ægr-um</i>	<i>ægr-aun</i>	<i>ægr-um</i>
V. <i>Æger</i>	<i>ægr-ā</i>	<i>ægr-um</i>
A. <i>Ægr-ō</i>	<i>ægr-ā</i>	<i>ægr-ō</i>
<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Ægr-i</i>	<i>ægr-æ</i>	<i>ægr-ā</i>
G. <i>Ægr-ōrum</i>	<i>ægr-ārum</i>	<i>ægr-ōrum</i>
D. <i>Ægr-is</i>	<i>ægr-is</i>	<i>ægr-is</i>
A. <i>Ægr-ōs</i>	<i>ægr-ās</i>	<i>ægr-ā</i>
V. <i>Ægr-i</i>	<i>ægr-æ</i>	<i>ægr-ā</i>
A. <i>Ægr-is</i>	<i>ægr-is</i>	<i>ægr-is</i>

68. Six adjectives in *us* and three in *er* have their gen. sing. in *iūs*, and dat. in *i*, in all the genders, viz.—*Alius*, a, ud; *Nullus*; *Solus*; *Totus*; *Ullus*; *Unus*; *Alter*, -ēra, -ērum; *Uter*, ra, rum; *Neuter*, ra, rum.

Unus, "one."

<i>Sing.</i>		
N. <i>Unus</i>	<i>unā</i>	<i>unum</i>
G. <i>Unius</i> ¹	<i>unius</i>	<i>unius</i>
D. <i>Unī</i>	<i>unī</i>	<i>unī</i>
A. <i>Unum</i>	<i>unam</i>	<i>unum</i>
V. <i>Unē</i>	<i>unā</i>	<i>unum</i>
A. <i>Unō</i>	<i>unā</i>	<i>unō</i>
<i>Plur.</i>		
N. <i>Unī</i>	<i>unæ</i>	<i>unā</i>
G. <i>Unorum</i>	<i>unarum</i>	<i>unorum</i>
D. <i>Unis</i>	<i>unis</i>	<i>unis</i>
A. <i>Unos</i>	<i>unas</i>	<i>unā</i>
V. <i>Unī</i>	<i>unæ</i>	<i>unā</i>
A. <i>Unis</i>	<i>unis</i>	<i>unis</i>

69. Adjectives of *one* and *two terminations* are of the *third* declension.

70. Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e*; Abl. *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; G. *ium*.

71. Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us*; Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *a*; G. *um*.

¹ *Solius* appears to have *i*, though commonly considered as *long*.

72. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*, (except in *Nom. sing.*)

73. They have *Abl. e* or *i*. *Neut. plur. ia*; *G. ium*.

For participles *abl. e* } is the more common.
For adjectives *abl. i* }

74. But

Pauper, superstes, cælebs, ales, hospes,
Have *e*, with compos, puber, index, sospes,

and a few more; these have also *G. plur. um*. *Vetus* (*G. veteris*) has *neut. pl. vetēra*.

75. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of two and three terminations, are,—

	Two Terminations.				Comparatives.				One Termination.			
	S.		P.		S.		P.		S.		P.	
	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	N.	M.F.	(N.)	M.F.	N.
N. V.	<i>is</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ores</i>	<i>ora</i>	<i>is</i>	—	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>
G.	<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>		<i>oris</i>		<i>orum</i>		<i>is</i>		<i>ium</i>	
D.	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>		<i>ori</i>		<i>oribus</i>		<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>	
Acc.	<i>em</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>orem</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ores</i>	<i>ora</i>	<i>em</i>	as nom.	<i>es</i>	<i>ia</i>
Abl.	<i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>		<i>ore (ori)</i>		<i>oribus</i>		<i>e</i> or <i>i</i>		<i>ibus</i>	

Acer, "sharp."

Sing.

N. Acer or acris	acr-is	acr-e
G. Acr-is	acr-is	acr-is
D. Acr-i	acr-i	acr-i
A. Acr-em	acr-em	acr-e
V. Acer or acr-is	acr-is	acr-e
A. Acr-i	acr-i	acr-i

Plur.

N. Acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-ī
G. Acr-ium	acr-ium	acr-ium
D. Acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus
A. Acr-es	acr-es	acr-ī
V. Acr-es	acr-es	acr-ī
A. Acr-ibus	acr-ibus	acr-ibus

79. *Duo* and *tres* are thus declined :

N. Duo ¹	duo	duo	N. Tres	tres	tri
G. Duorum	duorum	duorum	G. Trium	trium	trium
D. Duobus	duobus	duobus	D. Tribus	tribus	tribus
A. Duos or duo	duos	duo	A. Tres	tres	tri
V. Duo	duo	duo	V. Tres	tres	tri
A. Duobus	duobus	duobus	A. Tribus	tribus	tribus

§ 80. THE NUMERALS.

(1) CARDINALS. (answering to <i>how many?</i> (the first three declinable.)	ORDINALS. (marking the <i>place</i> anything holds in a <i>series</i> .)	DISTRIBUTIVES. (answering to <i>how many apiece</i> .)	ADVERBS.
1. unus	primus	singuli (pl.)	semel
2. duo	secundus	bini	bis
3. tres	tertius	terni	ter
4. quatuor	quartus	quaterni	quater
5. quinque	quintus	quini	quinquies
6. sex	sextus	sexni	sexies
7. septem	septimus	septeni	septies
8. octo	octavus	octeni	octies
9. novem	nonus	noveni	novies
10. decem	decimus	deni	decies
11. undecim	undecimus	undeni	undecies
12. duodecim	duodecim	duodeni	duodecies
13. tredecim	the two forms used, (tertius decimus, &c.)	the two forms used, (terni deni, &c.)	tredecies
14. quatuordecim			quatuordecies
15. quindecim			quindecies ²
16. sedecim			sedecies
17. septendecim	duodevicesimus undevicesimus	viceni	septiesdecies
18. duodeviginti			duodevices
19. undeviginti			undevices
20. viginti	vicesimus	centeni	vices
100. centum	vigesimus		centies
1000. mille	centesimus	milleni	millies
2000. { bis mille } { bina millia }	millesimus	bis milleni	bis millies.
	bis millesimus		

(2) Terminations of the multiples of *ten* and a *hundred*.

	CARD.	ORD.	DISTRIB.	ADV.
(Tens)	ginta	{ gesimus cesimus }	{ gēni cēni }	{ gies cies }
				{ added to <i>tri, quadra, quingua, sexta, septua, octo, nona.</i> The forms in <i>c</i> are used for 30 only.
(Hundreds)	{ genti centi }	{ gentesimus centesimus }	{ gēni cēni }	{ genties centies }
				{ added to <i>du, tre, quadrin, quinquin, sex, septin, octin, non,</i> (for <i>adv.</i> also nonn.) The forms in <i>c</i> are for 2, 3, 6, (2 × 3 = 6.)

¹ So *ambo, both*.² Various forms are used besides those set down; especially two uncombined forms are often used where *one compound form* is given. Thus in the adverbs, for *quindecies, quinque decies* and *quinquies decies* may be used: so *sexies decies, &c.*

Obs. (1) The terminations of so many *tens* and so many *hundreds* are alike in the distributive series. But ~~the~~ the *hundreds* have a *consonant*, the *tens* a *vowel* before the termination, except for the multiples by three, in which observe that the *hundreds* have the *earlier* vowel, (*tre* for *hundreds*; *tri* for *tens*.) The forms in *genteni*, *centeni*, are also used for the *hundreds*.

Obs. (2.) The intermediate forms are made up of two or more of the forms given: *unus et viginti*, *et viginti unus*, (one and twenty, or twenty-one; as in English :) but the forms *duode-*, *unde-*, (*two-from, one-from,*) are mostly used for the *two* before every *ten* or *hundred*. Above 100 (in the cardinal numbers) the *larger precedes*, with or without *et*; but *et* is never used twice.

(*Trecenti sexaginta sex*; or, *trecenti et sexaginta sex*.)

Mille is an indeclinable *adj.*: but *millia* (thousands) is a *plural substantive*; *-millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

~~With~~ With substantives used in the plural only, the *distributives* are used instead of the *cardinals*; *binæ literæ*, *two letters*. But *uni*, *æ*, *a*, is used, (not *singuli*,) and *trini* is used for *three*, not *terni*.

§ 81. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

82. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *masc.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*; thus: *Doctus*, *doct-ior*; *sapiens*, *G. sapient-is*, *sapient-ior*; *tener*, *tener-ior*;¹ *pulcher*, (*pulchr*), *pulchr-ior*.¹

83. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a*, *um*) to the root.

(a) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rimus* (*a*, *um*) to the nominative; as, *Pulcher*, *pulcherrimus*.

84. *Facilis* *easy*, *difficilis* *difficult*, *similis* *like*, *dis-similis* *unlike*, *gracilis* *slender*, *humilis* *low*, make the superlative in *limus*; as, *Simillimus*, *facillimus*, &c.

85. The following are quite irregular:—

(1) <i>Bonus</i> , (<i>good</i>), <i>melior</i> , <i>optimus</i> .	<i>Magnus</i> , (<i>great</i>), <i>major</i> , <i>maximus</i> .
<i>Malus</i> , (<i>bad</i>), <i>pejor</i> , <i>pessimus</i> .	<i>Parvus</i> , (<i>little</i>), <i>minor</i> , <i>minimus</i> .
<i>Multus</i> , (<i>much</i> , <i>pl. many</i>), <i>plurimus</i> .	<i>Plus</i> , (<i>neut.</i>) <i>G. pluris</i> , are the only forms in <i>sing.</i>
<i>Multum</i> , (<i>much</i>), <i>plus</i> , <i>plurimum</i> .	<i>Plures</i> , <i>neut.</i> , <i>plura</i> : <i>G. plurium</i> , &c.
<i>Plerique</i> (<i>-æque</i> , <i>-ique</i>) is used for " <i>most</i> " without a substantive.	

¹ Remember that for adjectives in *er*, the whole nominative is the root, the preceding *e* being often dropped.

§ 123. CONJUGATIONS.

124. There are *four* conjugations of verbs in Latin, distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the present infinitive active.

The *first* conjugation has *ā* long before *re*; as, am-āre, nat-āre, &c.

The *second* conjugation has *ē* long before *re*; as, mōn-ēre, doc-ēre, &c.

The *third* conjugation has *ě* short before *re*; as, rěg-ěre, lěg-ěre, &c.

The *fourth* conjugation has *ī* long before *re*; as, aud-īre, hinn-īre, &c.

126. The auxiliary verb *sum* is thus conjugated:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infjn.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>
<i>Sum</i>	<i>Esse</i>	<i>Fui</i>	<i>Futurus.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *am.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Sum,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>Sūmus,</i>	<i>We are,</i>
2. <i>Es,</i>	<i>Thou art or you are,</i>	<i>Estis,</i>	<i>Ye or you are,</i>
3. <i>Est,</i>	<i>He is ;</i>	<i>Sunt,</i>	<i>They are.</i>

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1. <i>Eram,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>Erāmus,</i>	<i>We were,</i>
2. <i>Eras,</i>	<i>Thou wast or you were.</i>	<i>Erātis,</i>	<i>Ye or you were,</i>
3. <i>Erat,</i>	<i>He was ;</i>	<i>Erant,</i>	<i>They were.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

1. <i>Ero,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>	<i>Erīmus,</i>	<i>We shall be,</i>
2. <i>Eris,</i>	<i>Thou wilt be,</i>	<i>Erītis,</i>	<i>Ye will be,</i>
3. <i>Erit,</i>	<i>He will be ;</i>	<i>Erunť,</i>	<i>They will be.</i>

PERFECT. *have been or was.*

1. <i>Fui,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>Fuīmus,</i>	<i>We have been,</i>
2. <i>Fuisti,</i>	<i>Thou hast been,</i>	<i>Fuistis,</i>	<i>Ye have been,</i>
3. <i>Fuit,</i>	<i>He has been ;</i>	<i>Fuerunt or -ēre,</i>	<i>They have been</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1. <i>Fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>Fuerāmus,</i>	<i>We had been,</i>
2. <i>Fuēras,</i>	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>	<i>Fuerātis,</i>	<i>Ye had been,</i>
3. <i>Fuērat,</i>	<i>He had been ;</i>	<i>Fuerant,</i>	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have.*

1. <i>Fuēro,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>	<i>Fuerīmus,</i>	<i>We shall have been,</i>
2. <i>Fuēris,</i>	<i>Thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>Fuerītis,</i>	<i>Ye will have been,</i>
3. <i>Fuērit,</i>	<i>He will have been ;</i>	<i>Fuerint,</i>	<i>They will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may or can.*

1. <i>Sim,</i>	<i>I may be,</i>	<i>Sīmus,</i>	<i>We may be,</i>
2. <i>Sis,</i>	<i>Thou mayest be,</i>	<i>Sītis,</i>	<i>Ye may be,</i>
3. <i>Siť,</i>	<i>He may be ;</i>	<i>Sint,</i>	<i>They may be.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

1. <i>Essem,</i>	<i>I might be,</i>	<i>Esēmus,</i>	<i>We might be,</i>
2. <i>Esset,</i>	<i>Thou mightest be,</i>	<i>Esētis,</i>	<i>Ye might be,</i>
3. <i>Esset,</i>	<i>He might be ;</i>	<i>Essent,</i>	<i>They might be.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Amav-eram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	Amav-erimus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
Amav-eras,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>	Amav-eritis,	<i>Ye or you had loved,</i>
Amav-erat,	<i>He had loved ;</i>	Amav-erant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will.*

Am-abo,	<i>I shall love,</i>	Am-abimus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
Am-abis,	<i>Thou wilt love,</i>	Am-abitis,	<i>Ye or you will love,</i>
Am-abit,	<i>He will love ;</i>	Am-abunt,	<i>They will love.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have.*

Amav-ero,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	Amav-erimus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
Amav-eris,	<i>Thou wilt have loved,</i>	Amav-eritis,	<i>Ye or you will have loved,</i>
Amav-erit,	<i>He will have loved ;</i>	Amav-erint,	<i>They will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may or can.*

Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>	Am-emus,	<i>We may love,</i>
Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>	Am-etis,	<i>Ye or you may love,</i>
Am-et,	<i>He may love ;</i>	Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should.*

Am-erem,	<i>I might love,</i>	Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
Am-eres,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>	Am-arētis,	<i>Ye or you might love,</i>
Am-eret,	<i>He might love ;</i>	Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

PERFECT. *may have.*

Amav-erim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	Amav-erimus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
Amav-eris,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>	Amav-eritis,	<i>Ye or you may have loved,</i>
Amav-erit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>	Amav-erint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

Amav-isseim,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	Amav-issēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
Amav-isses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>	Amav-issētis,	<i>Ye or you might have loved,</i>
Amav-isset,	<i>He might have loved ;</i>	Amav-issent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-a or am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3. Am-āto,	<i>Let him love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-āte or am-atōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Amav-isse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse amat-ūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
Fuisse amat-ūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
Fut. Amat-urus, -a, -um,	<i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDS.

G. Am-andi,	<i>Of loving.</i>
D. Am-ando,	<i>To loving.</i>
A. Am-andum	<i>Loving.</i>
V. ———	
A. Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

SUPINES.

<i>Former.</i> Amât-um,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter.</i> Amât-u,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Part.	
Am-or,	am-âri,	amât-us.	<i>To be loved.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT. am.

Sing. Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
Am-âris or âre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
Am-âtur,	<i>He is loved ;</i>
Plur. Am-âmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
Am-amîni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. was.

Sing. Am-âbar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
Am-abâris or -abâre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
Am-abâtur,	<i>He was loved ;</i>
Plur. Am-abâmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
Am-abamîni,	<i>Ye or you were loved,</i>
Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT. have been, was, or am

Sing. Amât-us sum or fui,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
Amât-us es or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
Amât-us est or fuit,	<i>He has been loved ;</i>
Plur. Amât-i sumus or fuimus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
Amât-i estis or fuistis,	<i>Ye or you have been loved,</i>
Amât-i sunt or fuerunt or fuere,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us eram or fuēram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
Amāt-us eras or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
Amāt-us erat or fuērat,	<i>He had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i erāmus or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been loved,</i>
Amāt-i erātis or fuerātis,	<i>Ye or you had been loved,</i>
Amāt-i erant or fuerant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

FUTURE. *shall or will be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
Am-āberis or -abēre,	<i>Thou wilt be loved,</i>
Am-ābitur,	<i>He will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ābimur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
Am-ābimini,	<i>Ye or you will be loved,</i>
Am-ābuntur,	<i>They will be loved.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT. *shall have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us fuēro,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
Amāt-us fuēris,	<i>Thou wilt have been loved,</i>
Amāt-us fuērit,	<i>He will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
Amāt-i fueritis,	<i>Ye or you will have been loved,</i>
Amāt-i fuerint,	<i>They will have been loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. *may or can be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-er,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
Am-eris or -ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved,</i>
Am-etur,	<i>He may be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ēmur,	<i>We may be loved,</i>
Am-emini,	<i>Ye or you may be loved,</i>
Am-entur,	<i>They may be loved.</i>

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should be.*

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ārer,	<i>I might be loved,</i>
Am-ārēris or -arēre,	<i>Thou mightest be loved,</i>
Am-ārētur,	<i>He might be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ārēmur,	<i>We might be loved,</i>
Am-arēmini,	<i>Ye or you might be loved,</i>
Am-arentur,	<i>They might be loved.</i>

PERFECT. *may have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us sim or fuērim,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
Amāt-us sis or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayest have been loved,</i>
Amāt-us sit or fuērit,	<i>He may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i simus or fuerimus,	<i>We may have been loved,</i>
Amāt-i sitis or fueritis,	<i>Ye or you may have been loved,</i>
Amāt-i sint or fuērint,	<i>They may have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would, or should have been.*

<i>Sing.</i> Amāt-us essem or fuisset,	<i>I might have been loved,</i>
Amāt-us esses or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been loved,</i>
Amāt-us esset or fuisset,	<i>He might have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Amāt-i essemus or fuissetus,	<i>We might have been loved,</i>
Amāt-i essetis or fuissetis,	<i>Ye or you might have been loved,</i>
Amāt-i essent or fuissent,	<i>They might have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre or am-ātor,	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3. Am-ātor,	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amini,	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3. Am-antor,	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>PRES.</i> Am-āri,	<i>To be loved.</i>
<i>PERF.</i> Esse or fuisse amāt-us, -a, -um,	<i>To have been loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Amāt-um iri,	<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>PERF.</i> Amāt-us, -a, -um,	<i>Loved.</i>
<i>FUT.</i> Am-āndus, -a, -um,	<i>To be loved.</i>

§ 123. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Mōn-eo
Pres. Infīn. Mōn-ēre
Perf. Indic. Monu-i
Supine. Monīt-um

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Mon-eor
Pres. Infīn. Mon-ēri
Perf. Part. Monīt-us

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>I advise.</i>	<i>I am advised.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> Mōn-eo	<i>Sing.</i> Mōn-eor
Mon-es	Mon-ēris or ēre
Mon-et	Mon-etur
<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ēmus	<i>Plur.</i> Mon-ēmur
Mon-ētis	Mon-ēmīni
Mon-ent	Mon-entur

IMPERFECT.

<i>I was advising.</i>	<i>I was advised.</i>
<i>S.</i> Mōn-ēbam	<i>S.</i> Mōn-ēbar
Mon-ēbas	Mon-ēbaris or -bāre
Mon-ēbat	Mon-ēbātur
<i>P.</i> Mon-ēbāmus	<i>P.</i> Mon-ēbāmur
Mon-ēbātis	Mon-ēbāmīni
Mon-ēbant	Mon-ēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will advise

- S. Mōn-ēbō
Mon-ēbis
Mon-ēbit
P. Mon-ēbimur
Mon-ēbitis
Mon-ēbunt

I shall or will be advised.

- S. Mōn-ēbor
Mon-ēbēris or bēre
Mon-ēbitur
P. Mon-ēbimur
Mon-ēbimini
Mon-ēbuntur

PERFECT.

I advised or have advised

- S. Mōnū-i
Monu-isti
Monu-it
P. Monu-imus
Monu-istis
Monu-erunt or ēre

I was or have been advised.

- S. Monitus sum or fui
Monitus es or fuisti
Monitus est or fuit
P. Moniti sumus or fuimus
Moniti estis or fuistis
Moniti sunt or fuerunt

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

- S. Monu-eram
Monu-eras
Monu-erat
P. Monu-eramus
Monu-eratis
Monu-erant

I had been advised.

- S. Monitus eram or fueram
Monitus eras or fueras
Monitus erat or fuerat
P. Moniti eramus or fueramus
Moniti eratis or fueratis
Moniti erant or fuerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

I shall have advised.

- S. Mōnū-ēro
Monu-eris
Monu-erit
P. Monu-erimus
Monu-eritis
Monu-erint

I shall have been advised.

- S. Monitus ero or fuero
Monitus eris or fueris
Monitus erit or fuerit
P. Moniti erimus or fuerimus
Moniti eritis or fueritis
Moniti erint or fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

- S. Mōn-eam
Mōn-eas
Mon-eat
P. Mon-eāmus
Mon-eātis
Mon-eant

I may or can be advised

- S. Mōn-ear
Mon-eāris or eāre
Mon-eatur
P. Mon-eāmur
Mon-eāmini
Mon-eantur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., rule.

- S. Reg-ērem
Reg-eres
Reg-eret
P. Reg-erēmus
Reg-erētis
Reg-erent

I might, could, &c., be ruled.

- S. Rēg-ērer
Rēg-ērēris or reg-ērēre
Rēg-ērētur
P. Reg-erēmur
Reg-erēmīni
Reg-erēntur

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

- S. Rex-ērim
Rex-ēris
Rex-ērit
P. Rex-ērimus
Rex-ēritis
Rex-ērint

I may have been ruled.

- S. Rect-us sim or fuērim
Rect-us sis or fueris
Rect-us sit or fuerit
P. Rect-i simus or fuerimus
Rect-i sitis or fueritis
Rect-i sint or fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have ruled.

- S. Rex-issem
Rex-isses
Rex-isset
P. Rex-issēmus
Rex-issētis
Rex-issent

I might, could, &c., have been ruled.

- S. Rect-us essem or fuisset
Rect-us esses or fuisses
Rect-us esset or fuisset
P. Rect-i essēmus or fuissēmus
Rect-i essētis or fuissētis
Rect-i essent or fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rule thou.

- S. Rēg-e or reg-ito
Reg-ito
P. Reg-ite or reg-itōte
Reg-unto

Be thou ruled.

- S. Reg-ēre or reg-ītor
Reg-ītor
P. Reg-īmīni
Reg-untor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Rēg-ēre, to rule.

PERF. Rex-isse, to have ruled.

FUT. Rect-ūrus esse, to be about to rule.

PRES. Rēg-i, to be ruled.

PERF. Rectus esse or fuisse, to have been ruled.

FUT. Rectum īri, to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Reg-ens, ruling.

FUT. Rect-ūrus, about to rule.

PERF. Rectus, ruled.

FUT. Reg-endus, to be ruled

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

- S. Audiē-bam
Audiē-bas
Audiē-bat,
P. Audiē-bāmus
Audiē-bātis
Audiē-bant

I was heard.

- S. Aud-iēbar
Aud-iēbāris or -iēbāro
Aud-iēbātur
P. Aud-iēbāmur
Aud-iēbāmini
Aud-iēbantur

FUTURE.

I shall or will hear.

- S. Audi-am
Audi-es
Audi-et
P. Audi-ēmus
Audi-ētis
Audi-ent

I shall or will be heard.

- S. Aud-lar
Aud-iēris or iēre
Aud-iētur
P. Aud-iēmur
Aud-iēmini
Aud-iēntur

PERFECT.

I heard or have heard.

- S. Audīv-i
Audīv-isti
Audīv-it
P. Audīv-imus
Audīv-istis
Audīv-ērunt or ēre

I have been or was heard.

- S. Audītus sum or fui
Auditus es or fuisti
Auditus est or fuit
P. Audīti sumus or fuimus
Auditi estis or fuistis
Auditi sunt or fuerunt or fuere

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard

- S. Audīv-eram
Audīv-eras
Audīv-erat
P. Audīv-erāmus
Audīv-erātis
Audīv-erant

I had been heard.

- S. Audītus eram or fueram
Auditus eras or fueras
Auditus erat or fuerat
P. Audīti erāmus or fuerāmus
Auditi erātis or fuerātis
Auditi erant or fuerant

FUTURE-PERFECT.

I shall have heard

- S. Audīv-ēro
Audīv-ēris
Audīv-ērit
P. Audīv-ērimus
Audīv-ēritis
Audīv-ērint

I shall have been heard.

- S. Audītus ēro or fuēro
Auditus ēris or fueris
Auditus erit or fuerit
P. Audīti erimus or fuerimus
Auditi eritis or fueritis
Auditi erunt or fuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

- S. Audi-am
Audi-as
Audi-at
P. Audi-āmus
Audi-atis
Audi-ant

I may or can be heard.

- S. Aud-lar
Aud-lāris or aud-lāre
Aud-latur
P. Aud-lāmur
Aud-lāmini
Aud-lantur

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., hear.

- S. Aud-Irem
Aud-Ires
Aud-Iret
P. Aud-Irēmus
Aud-Irētis
Aud-Irent

I might, could, &c., be heard.

- S. Aud-Irer
Aud-Irēris or aud-Irēre
Aud-Irētur
P. Aud-Irēmur
Aud-Irēmini
Aud-Irentur

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

- S. Audīv-ērim
Audīv-ēris
Audīv-ērit
P. Audīv-ērimus
Audīv-ēritis
Audīv-ērint

I may have been heard.

- S. Audītus sim or fuerim
Auditus sis or fueris
Auditus sit or fuerit
P. Auditī simus or fuerimus
Auditī sitis or fueritis
Auditī sint or fuerint

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, &c., have heard.

- S. Audīv-issem
Audīv-isses
Audīv-isset
P. Audīv-issēmus
Audīv-issētis
Audīv-issent

I might, could, &c., have been heard.

- S. Audītus essem or fuisset
Auditus esses or fuisses
Auditus esset or fuisset
P. Auditī essēmus or fuissēmus
Auditī essētis or fuissētis
Auditī essent or fuissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Hear thou.

- S. Aud-i or aud-ito
Aud-ito
P. Aud-ite or aud-itote
Aud-iunto

Be thou heard.

- S. Aud-ire or aud-itor
Aud-itor
P. Aud-imini
Aud-iuntor

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Aud-ire, <i>to hear.</i>	PRES. Aud-iri, <i>to be heard.</i>
PERF. Audiv-isse, <i>to have heard.</i>	PERF. Audit-us esse or fuisse, <i>to have been heard.</i>
FUT. Audit-urus esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>	FUT. Audit-um iri, <i>to be about to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Aud-iens, <i>hearing.</i>	PERF. Audit-us, <i>heard.</i>
FUT. Audit-urus, <i>about to hear.</i>	FUT. Aud-iendus, <i>to be heard.</i>

GERUNDS.

N. ———
G. Aud-iendi
D. Aud-lendo
A. Aud-lendum
V. ———
A. Aud-lendo

SUPINES.

Former. Audit-um, <i>to hear.</i>	Latter. Audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i>
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

§ 132. LIST OF VERBS.

§ 133. FIRST CONJUGATION.

134. I. Am-o, amāv-i, amāt-um.

So āro, *to plough*; crēmo, *burn-down*; rōgo, *ask*; ligo, *bind*; pāro, *procure*; jūro *swear*; no, *swim*; ōro, *pray*; pecco, *sin*; postūlo, *demand*; gūberno, *govern*; vīto, *avoid*.

135. I. *With reduplication.*

Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, *give*. [Obs. the *short a*.]
Sto, stāre, stēti, stātum, *stand*. Verbs compounded with *sto* and a dissyllable take *stēti*; the rest *stīti*. Their future participles take *a*: constaturus, exstaturus.

136. II. -ui, -tum, (ītum.)¹

Crēpo, crepāre, crepui, crepītum, *make a noise*. Just so, concrepo, but increpo, discrepo, *have also* increpavi, discrepavi; increpo *both* increpatum *and* increpītum. Cūbo, cubare, cubui, (*seldom* cubavi,) cubītum, *lie down*.

¹ Observe that all these, except *pūto*, have the first syll. *short*.

Dōmo, domāre, domui, domītum, *tame*.

Plico, plicui, plicitum, and plicavi, plicatum, *fold*. (Duplicare, supplicare, and other verbs derived from adjectives in -plex, are regular.)

Sōno, sonāre, sonui, sonītum, *sound*.

Tōno, tonāre, tonui, tonītum, (*seldom tonatum*), *thunder*.

Vēto, vetare, vetui, vetītum, *forbid*.

Frico, fricare, fricui, fricātum and frictum, *rub*.

Jūvo, juvare, jūvi, jutum, *help*.

Lāvo, lavare, lavavi, lavatum, and lavi, lantum or lotum, *wash*.

Sēco, secare, secui, sectum, *cut*. Part. Fut. Pass. secaturus.

Mico, micare, micui, move quickly or tremulously; *glitter*. The compounds take the regular supine in atum.

Pōto, potare, potavi, potatum, (*generally potum*), *drink*. Its partic. perf. pass. is generally potus.

§ 137. SECOND CONJUGATION.

138. The only verbs that take the regular ēvi, ētum, are *leo* (obsolete) with its compound *deleo*, (*blot out; destroy utterly*;) *fleo*, *weep*; *neo*, *spin*; *pleo*, (obsolete,) *fill*, with its compounds; and (from the obsolete *oleo*, *grow*) *aboleo*, *abolish*; *adoleo*, generally *adolesco*, *grow up*; *obsoleo*, generally *obsolesco*, *grow out of date*. *Oleo*, *smell*, has *olui* without supine.

I. -ui, -itum.

Cāleo, am warm; **cāreo**, am without, want; **dābeo**, owe; **dōleo**, am pained, grieve, **hābeo**, have; **jāceo**, lie low; **mēreo**, deserve; **mōneo**, warn; **nōceo**, hurt; **pāreo**, obey; **plāceo**, please; **prābeo**, afford, supply; **tāceo**, hold my tongue; **terreo**, terrify; **vāleo**, am well.

II. -ui, -tum.

Dōceo, docēre, docui, doctum, *teach*.

Misceo, miscēre, miscui, mistum or mixtum, *mix*.

Tēneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *hold*.

Torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, *parch, roast*.

III. -ui, -sum.

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, *value, am of opinion*. *Recenseo* has also recensitum.

IV. -ui, without supine.

Arceo, ward off, keep off; **āreo**, am dry; **ēgeo**, need; **flōreo**, flower, flourish; **horreo**, shudder; **languēo**, am languid; **lāteo**, lie hid; **mādeo**, am wet; **māreo**, mourn; **nīteo**, shine; **ōleo**, smell; **pālleo**, am pale; **pāteo**, stand open; **rīgeo**, am stiff; **rūbeo**, am red; **sīleo**, am silent; **sorbeo**, suck in or up, (sorbul and sorpsal;) **splendēo**, glitter; **stūdeo**, pursue as a study; **stūpeo**, am astounded; **timeo**, fear; **torpeo**, am torpid; **tūmeo**, swell, (neut.) **vīgeo**, am vigorous, flourish; **vīreo**, am green.

§ 139. THIRD CONJUGATION.

140. I. Roots with a *p* sound : *b* or *p*.

Carpo, carpēre, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*. *Comp.* discerpo, &c.
 Nūbo, nubēre, nupsi, nuptum, *veil*; *marry*, (of the female.)
 Rēpo, repēre, repsi, reptum, *creep*.
 Scalpo, scaipēre, scalpsi, scalptum, *grave, cut*.
 Scribo, scribēre, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.
 Sculpo, sculpēre, sculpsi, sculptum, *carve*.
 Serpo, serpēre, serpsi, serptum, *crawl*.
 Cāpio, capēre, cēpi, captum, *take*. *Compounds*, -cipio, -cepi, -ceptum.
 Rumpo, rumpēre, rūpi, raptum, *burst*.
 Bībo, bibēre, bībi, bibitum, *drink*.
 Lambo, lambēre, lambi, lambitum, *lick*.
 Rapio, rapēre, rapui, raptum, *snatch*.
 Sapio, sapēre, sapui, (*sup. doubtful*;) *taste*, (*intrans.*;) *am wise*. *Compounds* resipui, &c.
 Strēpo, strepēre, strepui, strepitum, *make a noise*; *roar*.
 Cūpio, cupēre, cupīvi, cupitum, *desire*.

141. II. Roots with a *t* sound : *d* or *t*.

Claudo, claudēre, clausi, clausum, *shut*. *Comp.*, -clūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum.
 Divīdo, dividēre, divīsi, divīsum, *divide*.
 Lædo, lædēre, læsi, læsum, *injure, hurt*. *Comp.*, -līdo, -līsi, -līsum.
 Lūdo, ludēre, iusi, lusum, *play*.
 Trūdo, trūdēre, trusi, trusum, *thrust, push*.
 Vādo, vadēre, vasi, vasum, *go*. *Perf. and sup. only found in its compounds*.
 Cēdo, cedēre, cessi, cessum, *yield*.
 Mitto, mitēre, misi, missum, *send*.
 Quātio, quatēre, (quassi,) quassum, *shake*. *The perfect is only found in the compounds* : e. g. concussi.
 Flecto, flectēre, flexi, flexum, *bend*.
 Necto, nectēre, nexi and nexui, nexum, *knit, join together*. } from simpler roots with
 Accendo, accendēre, accendi, accensum, *light*. *So incendio*. } a *k* sound, (*flec. nec.*)
 Edō, edēre, ēdi, esum, *eat*.
 Defendo, defendēre, defendi, defensum, *ward off, defend*. *So offendo*.
 Fundo, fundēre, fūdī, fusum, *pour*.
 Prehendo,prehendēre,prehendi,prehensum, *take hold of*.
 Scando, scandēre, scandi, scansum, *climb*.
 Verto, vertēre, verti, versum, *turn*.
 Cādo, cadēre, cecīdi, cāsum, *fall*. *The compounds take i, as incīdo, incīdi, incīsum* :
so occīdo and recīdo. *The rest have no supine*.
 Cædo, cædēre, cecīdi, cæsum, *cut, fell, hew*. *The compounds take i, as accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*.
 Pendo, pendēre, pependi, pensum, *hang*. (*trans.*)
 Tendo, tendēre, tetendi, tensum and tentum, *stretch*.
 Fōdio, fodēre, fōdi, fossum, *dig*.
 Pando, pandēre, pandi, pansum and passum, *spread open*.
 Scindo, scindēre, scīdi, scissum, *cut*.
 Sīdo, sidēre, sīdi, sessum, *settle down*.
 Peto, petēre, petīvi, petitum, *aim at, seek*.

142. III. Roots with a *k* sound : *c*, *g*, *qu*, *h*.

Cingo, cingēre, cinxi, cinctum, *gird, surround*.
 Cōquo, coquēre, coxi, coctum, *cook*.
 Dico, dicēre, dixi, dictum, *say, call*.
 Dūco, ducēre, duxi, ductum, *lead, think*.

Sterno, sternere, strāvi, strātum, *throw down, strew.*
 Gēro, gerere, gessi, gestum, *carry, bear.*
 Uro, urere, ussi, ustum, *burn.*
 Pārio, parere, pepēri, partum, *bring forth.* Part. Fut. pariturus.
 Curro, currere, cucurri, cursum, *run.*
 Eēro, serere, serui, sertum, *connect, join.*
 Sēro, serere, sēvi, sātum, *sow.*
 Quæro, quærere, quæsiui, quæsitum, *seek.* Comp., acquirō, &c.
 Tēro, terere, trīvi, tritum, *rub*

144. V. Roots with s, x, (= cs.)

Texo, texere, texui, textum, *weave.*
 Arcesso, arcessere, arcessiui, arcessitum, *send for.*
 Capesso, capessere, capessiui, capessitum, *seize hold of, undertake.*
 Laccio, lacescere, lacesiui, lacesitum, *provoke, harass.*
 Viso, visere, visi, visit.

145. VI. Roots in u and v.

Acuo, acuere, acui, acutum, *sharpen.*
 Arguo, arguere, argui, argutum, *prove, convict.*
 Exuo, exuere, exui, exutum, *put off.*
 Imbuo, imbuiere, imbuli, imbutum, *dip, imbue.*
 Induo, induere, indui, indutum, *put on.*
 Minuo, minuere, minui, minutum, *lessen.*
 Ruo, ruere, rui, rutum, *rush; and (trans.) hurl down.* Fut. Part. ruiturus.
 Statuo, statuere, statui, statutum, *establish, determine.*
 Suo, suere, sui, sutum, *sew.*
 Tribuo, tribuere, tribui, tributum, *allot to.*
 Solvo, solvere, solvi, solutum, *loosen, pay.*
 Volvo, volvere, volvi, volutum, *roll.*
 Struo, struere, struxi, structum, *pile up, build.*
 Vivo, vivere, vixi, victum, *live.*
 Fluo, fluere, fluxi, fluxum, *flow.*
 (Without supine.)
 Metuo, metuere, metui, *fear.*
 Pluo, pluere, plui, *rain.*

146. VII. Roots with sc in the present. The perf. shows that these verbs are derived from pure roots. The only exceptions are *disco, didici*, learn; *posco, pōposci*, demand.

Cresco, crescere, crēvi, crētum, *increase, (intrans.)*
 Nosco, noscere, nōvi, nōtum, *make myself acquainted with, (novi = I know.) In the compounds the fut. part. is iturus, except ignosco, pardon; ignoturus.*
 Pasco, pascere, pāvi, pastum, *feed, (trans.)*
 Quiesco, quiescere, quīevi, quīetum, *rest.*
 Suesco, suescere, suevi, suetum, *accustomed, to grow accustomed.*

To this class belong the Inchoatives which express the beginning of an action or state. They either borrow the perfect and supine from their roots, or are without supine. Of the former kind are—

Coalesco, coalescere, coalui, coalitum, (alo,) *grow together.*
 Concupisco, concupiscere, concupivi, concupitum, (cupio,) *desire.*
 Condoleasco, condolescere, condolui, condolitum, (dolco,) *feel pain.*
 Convalesco, convalescere, convalui, convalitum, (valeo,) *get well*

Exardesco, exardescere, exarsi, exarsum, (ardeo,) take fire.
 (Olesco,) hence **adulesco, adulescere, adolevi, adultum, grow up.**
Revivisco, reviviscere, revixi, revictum, come to life again.

Of the other kind are—

Calesco, calescere, calui, grow warm.
Contresco, contescere, conticui, hold my tongue.
Contremisco, contremiscere, contremui, tremble.
Extimesco, extimescere, extimui, dread.
Horresco, horrescere, horruī, shudder.
Tepesco, tepescere, tepui, grow warm.
Ditesco, grow rich, pinguesco, grow fat, and a few more, have neither perfect nor supine.

§ 147. FOURTH CONJUGATION. NEUT. PASSIVES.

Sepelio, sepelire, sepelivi, sepultum, bury.
Farcio, farcire, farsī, fartum, stuff.
Fulcio, fulcire, fulsi, fultum, prop.
Sarcio, sarcire, sarsi, sartum, patch, repair.
Sēpio, sepire, sepsi, septum, hedge in.
Sancio, sancire, sanxi and sancivi, sanctum, confirm, make binding.
Vincio, vincire, vinxi, vinctum, bind.
Amicio, amictre, amictum, clothe.
Sentio, sentire, sensi, sensum, feel, perceive by the senses.
Comperio, comperire, comperi, compertum, ascertain.
Haurio, haurire, hausi, haustum, draw, (of liquids.)
Reperio, reperire, repēri, repertum, find.
Vēnio, venire, vēni, ventum, come.
Aperio, aperire, aperui, apertum, open.
Salio, salire, salui and salii, saltum, spring, leap. The compounds have -sillo, -silui.
Cecutio, am blind, ferio, strike, prurio, itch, have no perf. and supine.

148. Neuter-passives ; or, neuters with a perfect that is *passive in form*.

Their past participle is the part. of perfect active. Ausus, having dared.

audeo	ausus	sum..... to dare.
gaudeo	gavisus	sum..... rejoice.
soleo	solitus	sum..... am wont.

§ 149. DEPONENT VERBS.

150. Deponents of active signification have generally four participles ; as, *sequens, secutūrus, secūtus, sequendus*, from *sequor*, "to follow." Those of a neuter signification have generally but three ; as, *labens, lapsus, lapsurus*, from *lābor*, "to slip," or "glide."

§ 155. THIRD CONJUGATION.

adipiscor, adeptus.....	obtain.	nascor, natus.....	am born.
amplector, amplexus, }	.....embrace.	nitior, nisus or nixus..(abl. in with acc.)	rely on; strive
complector, complexus, }	.....	obliscor, oblitus (gen. acc.).....	to forget.
divertor, diversus.....	put up at an inn; lodge.	paciscor, pactus.....	bargain, (intrans.)
expergiscor, expectatus.....	awake.	pascor, pastus.....	feed, (intrans.)
fruo, frui, fructus (abl.).....	enjoy.	pātor, passus.....	suffer.
fungor, functus (abl.).....	discharge.	proficiscor, profectus.....	set out; to march.
gradior, gressus.....	step, walk.	quēror, questus.....	complain.
invēhor, invectus.....	inveigh against.	revertor, reversus.....	return.
irascor, iratus (dat.).....	be angry.	sēquor, secūtus.....	follow.
lābor, lapsus.....	to slip down; glide.	vescor, (without perf.) (abl.).....	feed on.
mōrior, mortuus.....	die.	ulciscor, ultus.....	revenge; punish.
nanciscor, nactus.....	get.	ūtor, usus (abl.).....	use.

§ 156. FOURTH CONJUGATION.¹

adsentior, adsensus (dat.).....	assent to.	oppērior, oppertus (opperitus).....	wait for.
blandior (dat.).....	fawn on; flatter.	ordior, orsus.....	begin.
experior, expertus.....	try.	ōrior, ortus, oriri ²	arise.
largior.....	give money.	partior.....	divide.
mentior.....	lie.	pōrior ³ (gen or abl.).....	to get possession of.
mōrior, mensus.....	measure.	sordior.....	to cast lots; obtain, (by lot.)
mōllior.....	plan.		

§ 157 IMPERSONALS.

158. Impersonals that are never used *personally*.⁴

oportet, oportuit.....	it behooves; one ought.	*pœnitet, pœnituit.....	it repents
libet, libuit.....	it pleases.	*pudet, puduit.....	(one) is ashamed
licet, licuit.....	it is permitted; one may.	*miseret.....	one pities
*piget.....	it grieves (one.)	*tædet.....	it irks; one is tired of.
		rēfert (gen.) ⁵	it concerns

159. Impersonals that are also used personally in the third person sing. or plur.

tonat.....	it thunders.	fulminat.....	it lightens
pluit.....	it rains.	rorat.....	the dew falls.
ningit.....	it snows.	vesperascit.....	it grows dusk.
grandinat.....	it hails.	lucescit.....	it grows light.

¹ When the *partic.* is not set down, it is *itus*.² So *oritur*, &c., but in the *present* it is of the third; *orēris*, *oritur*.³ *Potiri*, *potitus*: but *potēris*, *potitur*, &c., in *pres.* like the third; and so *poteris* &c.⁴ Those that have an *asterisk* prefixed take acc. of person, gen. of the *thing*, (or object of the feeling.) *It repenteth me of my folly.*⁵ Abl. sing. fem. of a possessive pronoun.

160. Personal verbs that have also an *impersonal* use, in a particular meaning.

stat.....	it is resolved.	solet, assolet.....	it usually happens
constat.....	it is agreed upon; it is well known.	accidit.....	it happens.
præstat.....	it is better.	accedit ¹	it is added.
restat.....	it remains.	excidit ²	it has escaped me.
delectat.....	it is delightful.	conducit }.....	it is serviceable, or conducive.
juvat.....	it is pleasant.	contingit.....	it happens; falls to the lot of.
vacat.....	[I, you, &c.] have leisure.	sufficit.....	it suffices.
placet.....	[I, you, &c.] resolves.	interest ³ (gen.).....	it concerns; is of importance to.
attinet.....	it relates to; concerns.	crebescit.....	a report spreads.
apparet.....	it appears.	evenit.....	it turns out.
deceat.....	it is becoming.	expedit.....	it is expedient.
dedecet.....	it is unbecoming.	fit.....	it happens.
liquet.....	it is clear.	convēnit ⁴	it is suitable.
patet.....	it is plain.		
latet.....	it is concealed; unknown.		

161. The compounds of *sum* are conjugated exactly in the same way as the verb itself. (See 126.)

absum, am absent.	desum, am wanting.
adsum, am present.	præsum, am before; or at the head of.
intersum, am amongst; am engaged in.	prosum, profit; do good to.
obsum, am in the way of; hinder.	

- (1.) *Prosum* inserts a "d" before those tenses of *sum* that begin with a vowel:

Not *pro-es, pro-eram*: but *prodes, proderam*.

- (2.) *Absum, præsum* have present participle *absens, præsens*: but the latter only in the sense of "present."

§ 162. IRREGULAR AND OTHER VERBS.

- (1.) *Possum*, { I am able; I can. (*Possum, potēs, potest; possumus, potestis, possunt.* Imp. *poteram.* Fut. *potēro.* Subj. pres. *possim.* Imp. *possem.* Root of perf. *potu.* See First Lat. Book, p. 56.)
- (2.) { *Volo*, am willing; wish.
{ *Nōlo*, am unwilling. (*for non volo.*)
{ *Mālo*, had rather. (*for magis or magis volo.*)

¹ *Accedit quod* or *ut* may generally be rendered by, *moreover; besides this.*

² Properly, *de memoriā* excidit, it has slipped my memory; I have forgotten.

³ Abl. sing. fem. of possessive pronouns.

⁴ *Ut convenerat*, as had been agreed upon. In this sense a *nom.* is generally expressed.

Pres.	volo, nōlo, mālo,	vis, non vis, mavis,	vult, non vult, mavult,	volūmus, nolūmus, malūmus,	vultis, non vultis, mavultis,	volunt. nolunt. majant.
Subj. Pres.	vōlim,	nōlim,	mālim.	(is, it: Imus, Itis, int.)		
Subj. Imperf.	vellem,	nollem,	mallem.			
Infinitive.	velle,	nolle,	malle.			

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles, (except *vōlens, nolens,*) nor imperative, except *nōli, nolito, — nolite.*

Nōli putāre, (be unwilling to think, =) *do not think.*

- (3.) *Fēro*, (tūli, lātum,) bear. (Imperative, *fer — ferte.*)

This verb has *fers, fert, fertur*, for *feris, ferit, feritur*; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem, ferre, &c.*, for *ferērem, ferēre.*

- (4.) *Fīo*, become; am made or done: *partly used as pass. of fācio.*

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has *fīrēm* for *fīrem*, and an irregular infin. *fīeri*. It has no perfect; *factus sum, eram, &c.*, being in use.

- (5.) *Edo*, (ē,) eat.

This verb is conjugated regularly after the third; but has *also* some forms which are common to it and *sum*.

Present.	<i>edo, &c.,</i>	and also,	<i>ēs,</i>	<i>est,</i>	— <i>estis,</i>	—
Imperative.	<i>ede, &c.,</i>	and also,	<i>es,</i>	<i>esto,</i>	— <i>estis,</i>	<i>estote.</i>
Subj. Imperf.	<i>edērem,</i>	and also,	<i>essem,</i>	<i>esses, &c.</i>		
Infinitive.	<i>edēre.</i>	and	<i>esse,</i>			

N. B. These forms must be distinguished from those of *sum* by their transitive meaning. *ēs*, thou eatest; *es*, thou art.

- (6.) *Eo*, (ivi,¹ Itum,) go. (Pres. *eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.* Imp. *ibam.* Fut. *ibo.* Imperat. *i.* Subj. pres. *eam.* Imp. *īrem.* Part. *iens, euntis, &c.* Ger. *cundi, &c.*)

- (7.) { *Queo*, am able; can. | These verbs are conjugated like *eo*, as far
{ *Nequeo*, am unable; cannot. | as they are in use: 3 plur. *queunt, nequeunt.* Subj. pres. *queam, nequeam, &c.*

- (8.) { *Memini*, { I remember; with only the tenses derived from the perfect, which
{ has the meaning of a present. Imper. *memento.*
{ *Cœpi*, I have begun, (*cœptus est* before pass. infin.)
{ *Odi*, I hate, (with meaning of present. See *memini*.)

- (9.) *Inquam*, I say: *inquit*, says he: *inquiunt*, say they, &c.

¹ In the compounds of *eo*, the perf. is generally *ii*.

4. *Indefinite.*

Quando ?	<i>When ?</i>
Aliquando,	} <i>Sometimes</i>
Nonnunquam,	
Interdum,	} <i>Always.</i>
Semper,	
Nunquam,	} <i>Never.</i>
Interim,	
Interea,	} <i>In the mean time.</i>
Quotidie,	
	<i>Daily.</i>

(2) *Continuance of Time.*

Quamdiu ?	<i>How long ?</i>
Diu,	<i>Long.</i>
Tamdiu,	<i>So long.</i>
Jamdiu,	} <i>Long ago.</i>
Jamdūdum,	
Jampridem,	

(3) *Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.*1. *Indefinite.*

Quoties ?	<i>How often.</i>
Sæpe,	<i>Often.</i>
Raro,	<i>Seldom.</i>
Toties,	<i>So often.</i>
Aliquoties,	<i>For several times.</i>
Vicissim,	<i>By turns</i>
Rursus,	<i>Again.</i>
Iterum,	<i>A second time.</i>
Subinde,	<i>Immediately after.</i>
Identidem,	<i>Several times.</i>

2. *Definite, or in Number.*

Semel,	<i>Once.</i>
Bis,	<i>Twice.</i>
Ter,	<i>Thrice.</i>
Quater,	<i>Four times.</i>

166. ADVERBS OF ORDER : as,—

Inde	<i>then.</i>	Denuo	<i>anew.</i>
Deinde	<i>thereafter.</i>	Denique	<i>finally</i>
Dehinc	<i>henceforth.</i>	Postremo	<i>lastly.</i>
Porro	<i>moreover.</i>	Primo, -um	<i>first.</i>
Deinceps	<i>successively.</i>	Secundo	<i>secondly</i>

&c. &c.

§ 167. PREPOSITIONS.

168. The prepositions governing the accusative are twenty-eight :—

Ante, apud, ad, adversus,
Circum, circa, citrà, cis,
Ergà, contra, inter, extrà,
Infrà, intrà, juxtà, ob,
Pènes, pòne, post, et præter,
Pròpe, propter, per, sècundum,
Suprà, versus, ultra, trans.

169. Fourteen prepositions govern the ablative :—

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,
Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.

170. Four prepositions govern sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative :—

In, sub, super, subter.

Prefixes.

20. præter, *by*.
 21. pro, *forth, forwards*.
 21. re, *back, again, away, un-*; (sometimes *very*, or *forth from within*.)
 22. retro, *backwards*.
 23. sē, *without, apart from*.
 24. sub, *under, away from beneath, from below upwards, somewhat*.
 25. subter, *underneath, away from underneath*.
 26. super, *above*.
 27. trans, *across, through, over to the other side*.
 28. nē, *not*.
 29. vē, *not, ill*.
 30. bene, *well*.
 31. male, *ill*.
 32. satis, *enough*.

Suffixes

prod before vowel: pol, por, before l, r.
 red before vowel.

assimilated before c, f, g, m, p, r. (But before m, p, r, and n, it is better to retain the b.)

trā, (d, j,) but trans preferred by Casan

(2) Suffixes

(a) VERBS.

33. are, from nouns: to make, produce, employ oneself about, procure, show oneself as: -ire (from nouns) are also trans.
 34. are, from root of supine: to do, strengthening the meaning of the primitive verb, (*intensives*.)
 35. it-are, from root of present or supine: to do frequently, continually, (*frequentatives*.)
 36. sc-ēre, to begin to—(*inchoatives*.)
 a, e, are the connecting vowels for the first and second conjugations; i for the third and fourth. Some are from nouns: their perfect is in ui, sc and the connecting vowel being thrown away.
 37. ūr-ire, to wish or want to—(*desideratives*.)
 38. ill-are, to do in a little degree or trifling way.
 39. ēre, from nouns, generally intransitive; to be or become.
 40. ari, from substantives; (same meaning as āre, 33.)

(b) SUBSTANTIVES.

41. or, from root of supine, a man who does—fem. rix.
 42. or, from root of present, express the action or state of the verb.
 43. io,
 44. us, of the fourth, } action or state of the verb: io especially the doing of the action.
 45. ūra,
 46. ido, (G. Idin for idon.) } are also abstract substantives from verbs.
 47. igo, (G. Igin for igon.) }
 48. men, } the thing done.
 49. mentum, } the thing by which—is done: that which does.
 I is the connecting vowel of the third, but the termination is often added without a connecting vowel. In the first and fourth, the terminations are added to the d, i.
 50. būlum, } that which is, that which is used for, that by which.
 51. ūlum,
 52. ēla,
 53. ēna, } also denote that by which.
 54. crum,
 55. strum, } a place or thing prepared for.
 56. um, the action of a verb as a thing: then the action itself.
 57. mōnla, the habit or continued state of.
 58. o,
 59. a, } express the person who.

93. *inus*, (from *ia*, *ium*,)
 94. *ensis*,
 95. *as*, (Gen. *ātis*: from *um*,)
 96. *ānus*, *iānus*,
 97. *eus*, (from *a*, *e*,)

} of such a town, &c., (*ānus*, *ensis*, from other places also, as *montānus*, *castrēnsis*.)

(e) Adjectives meaning of such a substance or material.

98. *ēnus*.
 99. *iuus*, (especially of trees, plants, &c.)

[When the root is not the name of a material or substance, *īnus* denotes likeness only.]

100. *cuis*, (used also as *ius*, a simple genitive meaning.)
 101. *ceus*, (denotes likeness only, when the root is not the name of a substance or material.)

(f) Adjectives signifying fulness, abundance.

102. *ōsus*.
 103. *lentus*, (often with connecting vowel *u*.)
 104. *idus*.

105. *arius* denotes of such an occupation; generally used as substantives. Sometimes pertaining to, (*agrarius*.)

106. *atus*,
 107. *itus*,
 108. *utus*,
 109. *stus*, *being in*; or *having* (such a property) *in oneself*.
 110. *stis*, *being in* such a place.
 111. *ster*,
 112. *stris*,
 113. *tills*,
 114. *timus*,
 115. *ivus* mostly denotes manner, circumstance, &c.
 116. *ernus* marks descent, and relations of time.
 117. *urnus* denotes time.

ADVERBS.

118. *ē*, from adjectives in *us*, *er*.
 119. *ē*, from adjectives of the third.
 120. *ō*, from some adjectives in *us*, *er*; and from past participles.
 121. *ter*, (with connecting vowel *i*, except after *n*,) from adjectives of the third and participles in *ns*.

[A few are from adjectives in *us*, but there is generally an adverb in *e* too.]

122. (*s*)*im*, } from root of supine, denoting the manner; but also from substantives,
 123. (*t*)*im*, } generally with connecting vowel *a*.
 124. *itus*, (from substantives, adjectives, and prepositions,) denoting whence.

(g) Common terminations of compound words.

125. *dīcus*, one who
 126. *lōquus*, ——— } *speaks*,
 127. *fīcus*, one who *does*,
 128. *vōlus*, one who *wishes*

} as adjectives.

§ 172. TABLE OF GENDERS.

OBS.— <i>Masc.</i> exceptions are in <i>capitals</i> ; <i>fem.</i> in common type; <i>neut.</i> in <i>italics</i> .		
THIRD DECLENSION.		
<i>Masc. terminations.</i>	<i>Fem. terminations.</i>	<i>Neut. terminations.</i>
ER, OR, OS, ES <i>increasing</i> , O, <i>when not</i> do, go, io.	do, go, io, ¹ as, is, aus, x, es <i>not increasing</i> , s <i>impure</i> .	c, a, t, e, l, n, ar, ur, us.
Principal Exceptions.	Principal Exceptions.	Principal Exceptions.
<i>er</i>) cadaver uber iter ver papaver verber tuber. <i>or</i>) arbor aquor marmor cor. <i>es</i>) compes requies merces seges merges teges quies æs. <i>os</i>) cos dos os (ossis) os (oris) ² chaos ² epos ² melos o) caro ² echo	<i>do</i>) ORDO <i>go</i>) CARDO <i>io</i>) LIGO MARGO (r') ³ <i>is</i>) AMNIS LAPIS ANGUIS (f) MENSIS AXIS ORBIS CASSIS (is) PANIS COLLIS PISCIS CINIS POSTIS CRINIS PULVIS ENSIS SANGUIS FASCIS TORRIS FINIS (f) UNGUIS FOLLIS VECTIS FUNIS VERMIS IGNIS <i>z</i>) CALIX CODEX CORTEX GREX POLLEX ² THORAX VERTEX es, pari- syll. } ACINACES s } MONS im- } PONS pure } FONS DENS QUADRANS RUDENS ² HYDROPS <i>as</i>) AS ELEPHAS vas (vasis) fas nefas.	<i>l</i>) SAL SOL <i>n</i>) LIEN REN SPLEN PECTEN <i>ur</i>) FUR FURFUR TURTUR VULTUR <i>us</i>) pecus (ūdis) inchs ⁶ senectūs juvenūs servitūs palūs tellūs salūs virtūs LEFUS MUS grus (m) sus (m.)
FIRST DECLENSION.	FOURTH DECLENSION.	
<i>Fem.</i> except names of <i>men</i> .	(us.)	
SECOND DECLENSION.	Masc.—except	
(us, ER. ⁴)	acus idus (pl.) manus porticus tribus	
<i>Masc.</i> —except	FIFTH DECLENSION.	
alvus domus humus vannus pelagus virus vulgus (also m.)	<i>Fem.</i> —except DIES (also f. in <i>sing.</i>) MERIDIES.	

¹ Words in *io*. that are not *abstract* nouns, are *masc.*, e. g. PAPILIO, PUGIO, SCPIO, SEPTENTRIO, STELLIO, UNIO, (pearl,) with the numeral nouns TERNIO, QUATERNIO, &c.

² Properly Greek words.

³ Those with (f), (m), are sometimes *fem.* and *masc.* respectively.

⁴ Greek nouns in ōdus, (exōdus, methōdus, &c.,) with *dialectus*, diphthongus, &c., are *fem.*

⁵ Hence *us* with long *u* is a *fem.* termination.

173. These rules depend on the terminations ; but some words have a particular gender from their *meaning*.

A. The names of *male persons*, and *winds*, are masculine.

B. The names of *female persons*, *countries*, and *islands*, *towns*, *plants*, and *trees*, are fem.

(a) But of *towns*, these are *masc.* :

- (1) Some in *o*, (CROTO, HIPPO, NARBO, SULMO, FRUSINO;) and
- (2) All plurals in *i* : VEIL, DELPHI

These are neuter :

- (1) All in *um*, or plur. *a* :
- (2) Those in *e* or *ur* of the third : Præneste, Tibur

(b) Of *trees* and *plants*,

- (1) Those in *er* (and many in *us*) of the second are *masc.* :
- (2) Those in *er*, *ur* of the third are *neut.* : acer, siler, robur, &c.

C. Several are common : comes, conjux, custos, dux, hospes, juvenis, parens princeps, sacerdos, &c.

Obs. 1. The Romans often used a *dependent genitive* where we use *prepositions*—*in, for, with, &c.*; as, *gratia beneficii; suarum rerum fiducia; Pyrrhi regis bellum, &c.*

2. Where we use a *substant.* with an *adject.* agreeing with it, an *adjective* in the *neuter* is often used in Latin, with a *genitive* governed by it; as, *quantum voluptatis; aliquid temporis; multum boni; quid novi? &c.*

RULE VII.—A partitive adjective governs a noun in the genitive.

Obs. 1. A partitive adjective is one that expresses *some* individuals considered as *parts* of a larger number or body; such as *which, every, each, both, some, &c.*, with *ordinal numerals, comparatives, and superlatives.*

2. The partitive *adject.* generally agrees in gender with the governed *genit.*, because that expresses the *thing meant*; as, *alter consulum; Græcorum oratorum præstantissimus.*

RULE VIII.—A substantive *having an adjective agreeing with it*, and *describing* a former substantive, stands in the *genitive* or *ablative*; as,—*vir excellentis ingenii; vir summo ingenio; ingentis magnitudinis serpens; classis septuaginta navium.*

RULE IX.—*Opus est* (there is need) is followed by an *ablative of what is needed.* The person who *needs* must be put in the *dative*; as,—*acuto homine nobis opus est; quid opus est verbis?* But the *thing needed* is often the *nominative* to the verb *sum*, or the *accusative* before *esse*; as,—*quarundam rerum nobis exempla per multa opus sunt.*

RULE X.—Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*; together with *verbals* in *ax*, and many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*, govern the *genitive*; as, *avidus novitatis; insidiarum plenus; magnæ urbis capax; audax ingenii; &c.*

Obs. 1. To this class belong many *participles used adjectively*; as, *veritatis amans; officii negligens; &c.*

it denotes that which is the object of the feeling or action spoken of, e. g., *amor virtutis, tedium laboris, desiderium otii, &c.* The *objective genitive* usually follows the noun on which it depends. (Zumpt.)

RULE XI.—Such a substant. as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.*, is often omitted in Latin after *to be*; so that *to be* is followed by a *genit.* governed by this subst. or an *adj.* in the *neuter* gender agreeing with it; as,—*est boni oratoris; judicis est; dementiae est; meum est; cujusvis hominis est errare.*

Obs. Such a noun as *officium, munus, indicium, &c.*, must be understood.

RULE XII.—Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, &c.*, take a *genit.* of the charge; as,—*proditionis accusare.*

Obs. 1. But if the charge be expressed by a *neut. pron.* it stands in the *accus.*; as, *si id me accusas.*

2. Instead of the *genit.* the *ablat.* with *de* is very common; as, *de pecuniis repetundis damnari.*

3. The punishment to which a person is condemned, stands generally in the *ablat.*; sometimes in the *genit.*, and often in the *accus.* with *ad*; as, *capitis (or capite) damnari; ad bestias condemnare.*

RULE XIII.—*Satago, misereor, and miseresco*, govern the *genit.*; verbs of *reminding, remembering, and forgetting*, the *gen.* or *acc.*; as,—*misereri omnium, meminisse beneficia. dissensionum oblivisci.*

RULE XIV.—With *interest* and *refert* the person to whom it is of importance, is put in the *genit.*; as,—*interest omnium recta facere.*

Obs. 1. But instead of personal pron., the possessives are used in the *ablat. fem.*; as, *quid nostrâ refert.*

2. The degree of importance is expressed by the *genit.* of *price*, or by an *adverb*; as, *magni interest quos quisque audiat quotidie.*

3. The thing that is of importance is expressed by an *infinitive clause*, or a *neut. pron.*; or a clause introduced by an *interrogative*, or by a *conjunction*; as, *illud meâ magni interest, te ut videam.*

RULE XV.—These impersonals, *puget, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret*, take an *accusat.* of the person feeling, a *genit.* of what causes the feeling; as,—*ignavum pœnitet aliquando ignaviæ; tædet me vitæ; tui me miseret; &c.*

RULE XVI.—Adjectives which signify *advantage*, *likeness*, *agreeableness*, *usefulness*, *fitness*, *facility*, &c., (with their *opposites*,) govern the *dative*.

Obs. 1. Several of these take also a *genit.*

2. *Natus*, *commodus*, *incommodus*, *utilis*, *inutilis*, *vehemens*, *aptus*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, may also be followed by *ad* with the *accus.* of the *object*, or *purpose*, for *which*.

3. *Similis* takes the *genit.* to express like a person in character.

RULE XVII.—The *dative* follows verbs that signify *advantage* or *disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*, of *giving* and *restoring*; of *promising* and *paying*; of *commanding* and *telling*; of *trusting* and *intrusting*; of *complying with* and *opposing*; of *threatening* and *being angry*; &c.

Obs. 1. All verbs may be followed by a *dat.* of the thing or person *to*, *for*, or *against* which any thing is done.

2. Many of these govern the *accus.* of the *immediate*, or *dat.* of the *remoter* object.

3. Verbs of *comparing* are also followed by the prepositions *cum*, *inter*, and *ad*.

4. Of verbs of *advantage* and *disadvantage*, *juvo*, *lædo*, *delecto*, and *offendo*, govern the *accus.*

5. Of verbs of *commanding*, *rego* and *guberno* govern the *accus.* only, and *tempero* and *moderor* the *acc.* or *dat.*

RULE XVIII.—*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*, governs the *dative*.

RULE XIX.—Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male*, generally govern the *dative*.

RULE XX.—*Most* of verbs compounded with *ad*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *præ*, *sub*, *con*, govern the *dat.*

RULE XXI.—*Many* verbs compounded with *ab*, *ante*, *de*, *e*, *post*, *pro*, *re*, *super*, govern the *dat.*

Obs. Some of these verbs governing the *dat.* are *transitive*, and govern the *accus.* only; some the *dat.* and *accus.*; and very many are followed by the *prepositions* they are compounded with.

RULE XXII.—*Dono*, *circumdo*, and several other verbs, take either the *dat.* of the *person* and an *accus.*

of the *thing*, or an *accus.* of the *person* and an *ablat.* of the *thing*; as,—*mihi coronam*, or *me coronâ donat*; *urbem muro*, or *murum urbi circumdat*.

RULE XXIII.—*Esse*, *donare*, *mittere*, *proficisci*, &c., with *dare* and *vertere*, (to impute,) govern *two datives*.

RULE XXIV.—*Sum* with a *dat.* of a person often expresses the English “*have*,” as,—*sunt mihi libri*; *est mihi vacca*; &c.

Obs. In *est mihi nomen* the name is either in the *namin.* or *dat.*, or (less commonly) the *genit.* The construction with the *dat.* is the most common.

RULE XXV.—The *accus.* denoting the immediate object of an action, follows all transitive verbs, whether active or deponent, to express the person or thing affected by the action implied in such verbs; as,—*pater amat* (or *tuëtur*) *filium*.

Obs. 1. The transit. or intransit. nature of a verb depends entirely upon its meaning, and can be learned only by practice in the use of a dictionary.

2. Many intrans. verbs become transit. when compounded with a preposition governing the *accus.*; as, *Pythagoras Persarum magos adit*.

3. Neuter verbs take a substant. of kindred meaning or origin in the *accus.*; and verbs of *tasting* or *smelling* of take the thing in the *accus.*; as, *somniare somnium*; *ceram olere*.

4. Other neuters are used transitively to express a *transitive notion* combined with their own proper notion; as, *sitire honores*; *idem gloria-tur*; *multa peccat*.

RULE XXVI.—Verbs of *asking*, *teaching*, *clothing*, and *concealing*, may have *two accus.*, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*; as,—*quis musicam docuit Epaminondam*? *nihil nos cēlat*.

Obs. Very frequently (and with some verbs *always*) either the *person* or the *thing* is governed by a *preposition*; such verbs are, *peto*, *postulo*, *quæ-ro*, &c.

RULE XXVII.—Transitive verbs that take *two nom inatives* in the passive, take *two accus.* in the active; as,—*Mesopotamiam fertilem efficit Euphrates*.

Obs. 1. One *accus.* is then in a sort of apposition to the other.

2. Such verbs are verbs of *calling*, *appointing* to an office, *considering*, &c., together with *facio*, *efficio*, *reddo*, &c.

3. *Facio* and *efficio* often take *ut* instead of the second *accus.*; as, *fac ut actam*, &c.

RULE XXVIII.—A noun of *time*, in answer to the question *when?* is put in the *ablat.*; in answer to *how long?* in the *accus.*; as,—*auctumno*, (in the autumn); *solis occasu*. *Ager multos annos quievit*.

- Obs.* 1. The time *in* or *within* which is expressed by *inter*, *intra*, or by the *ablat.*
 2. The time *how long before?* *how long after?* is expressed by the *ablat.*
 3. A *point* or *space* of *future* time for which any arrangement is now made, is expressed by *in* with the *accus.*; as, *me invitavit in posterum diem*.
 4. The *exact* time at which a thing is to be done, is expressed by *ad* with the *accus.*; as, *solvère ad Græcas calendas*.
 5. *Abhinc* (ago) of *past* time, is joined to the *accus.* or *ablat.*; as, *abhinc annos* (or *annis*) *quatuor*.
 6. *Natus* (born) takes the *accus.* of time, and expresses *at such an age*, *so many years old*; as, *tres annos natus*.

RULE XXIX.—The town *at which* a thing is done, if a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declens., is put in the *genit.*; if not, in the *ablat.*; as,—*vixi Romæ*, *Tarenti*, *Athenis*, *Gabiis*, *Tibûre*, &c.

RULE XXX.—In answer to *whither?* the place is put in the *accus.*; in answer to *whence?* in the *ablat.*; as,—*legati Athenas missi sunt*; *fugit Tarquinius Corintho*.

- Obs.* 1. These rules apply only to the names of *towns* and *small islands*. Before other words *prepositions* are used; and before *these* when the name has an *adjective*.
 2. *Urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, in apposition to the name of a town in the *genit.*, stands in the *ablat.*

RULE XXXI.—*Local space* is expressed by the *accus.*, sometimes by the *ablat.*; as,—*tridui viam processit*; *bidui abest*, (*iter* understood.)

RULE XXXII.—*Domus* and *rus*, like names of towns, are used with verbs of motion without prepositions; as,—*domum revertitur*; *manet domi*; *vivit rure* or *ruri*; *abiit rus*; &c.

- Obs.* *Humi*, *belli*, and *militiæ*, are used in the *genit.*, with verbs of motion and rest; as, *humi jacere*: *domi et militiæ*, "at home and abroad."

RULE XXXIII.—The *ablat.* is used to express the

c. Will not¹ these stars set? d. That war had hurt. e. Your teacher will teach. f. My servant was coming. g. Let that smith forge. h. Will not¹ my fields grow-green? i. My opinions will prevail. k. My auxiliaries will help. l. These beginners will learn. m. The lion was raging. n. These peacocks will be-proud. o. Has not¹ the teacher forbidden? p. That orator had spoken. q. These guards will guard. r. You will please by your beauty. s. My mind was rejoicing. t. He shall be conquered by my arm.

¹ Nonnē: to be the first word

EXERCISE 6.

a. Rex imperabit. b. Regina regnabit. c. Hæ leges non semper valebunt. d. Duces nostri fortiter pugnabunt. e. Non semper vivemus. f. Mox rosæ florebut. g. Vos sorores vigilabitis. h. Nos fratres dormiemus. i. Uxor tua narrabit. k. Tu maritus auscultabis. l. Miles sitiet et esuriet, (4.) m. Pedites nostri fugient, (3.) n. Equites vestri manebunt. o. Hic mons frigebit. p. Vallis illa tepebit. q. Dentes mei dolebunt. r. Tu homo sæpe peccabis. s. Hi ordīnes cadent.

a. The kings will command. b. The queen was reigning. c. This law will not always be-in-force. d. Our general fought bravely. e. Will¹ you live forever? [No.] f. Your roses are-in-flower. g. My sister was-awake. h. My brother was-sleeping. i. Our wives had related. k. My husband was listening. l. The soldiers are-thirsty and hungry. m. The foot-soldier was-flying. n. Let the horse-soldier remain. o. These mountains are-cold. p. The valleys will be-warm. q. My teeth ache.² r. The man had often sinned. s. This row³ was falling.

¹ Num: S. 46.

² Dolēre, to be in pain.

³ What is the nom. from which ordin-es comes?

EXERCISE 7.

Mater laudabat filiam. Agricōla arat agrum. Soror fratrem diligit. Accipies hodie nuntium. Piscis natat

(-aris). Quando in urbem vestram migraverimus, lætas dies agemus. Respondebimus ad id, quod interrogaveritis. Quando hunc librum finieris? Cras. Magnam gloriam acquisiveritis, si liberos vestros bene educaveritis. Is qui corpus suum bene vestierit, frigus non sentiet. Res nostras servabimus, si tecta nostra bene munierimus. Ii pueri, qui lectiones suas finierint, præmia accipient.

Will you not¹ reply to what² I ask (you)? If I ask³ you something, will you not⁴ answer? I will wait, till⁴ you come. Let him who has received⁵ a prize, learn well. If you learn⁶ well, you shall receive a prize. *When our body is well clothed,⁷ we shall not feel the cold. The town must be fortified.⁸ Let us spend happy days. We must ask the boys.⁹ I will come, when I have taken⁹ care of my body. *When our houses are well protected,⁷ (*partic.*) we must not fear.¹⁰ Has your father forbidden¹¹ (it)? [No.] We must rub the body.⁸ Anger must be tamed.⁸ Do not¹² drink much¹³ wine.

¹ S. 45. ² Say; to those things which (ad ea quæ) I shall-have-asked you.
³ Say; shall have asked. ⁴ S. 249. ⁵ Shall have received.
⁶ Shall have learned. ⁷ S. 168. ⁸ S. 163. ⁹ Say; shall have-taken-care-of.
¹⁰ S. 164. ¹¹ S. 46. ¹² S. 37. ¹³ S. 73.

EXERCISE 12.

[Fut. perf. is often translated 'by English present or perfect.]

Diligentia tua laborem patris valde adjūvit. Miseria matris valde moverat animum filiæ. Si Cornelii frater te viderit, statim curret ad te. Quando remedium morbi reperero! Ad primam horam diei naves usque ad introitum magni portûs pervenerunt. Id nos comperimus et vos vidistis. Hostes obsederant portas urbis nostræ, quum tu advenisti. Milites gladios jam acuerunt. Si tu hanc pecuniam solveris, accipies aliam; nihil adhuc solvisti. Arcem urbis fortiter defendimus. Num aquam gelidam bibisti? Minime; sed vinum bibi. Tu autem, quid edisti? Si patriæ hostem fortiter vicerimus, bene fecerimus.

I have not-yet¹ seen my father and mother. Why are² the soldiers of our army come? Have³ you already sharp-

lius's brothers. We have given roses and fruit to the boy and the girl. Who has performed that service for us? After⁹ he had performed that service for us, he went-away. I will ask who¹⁰ performed me that service. The wolf, which the shepherds drove-away, had bitten two or three sheep. Who has cut-down this tree? I asked who¹⁰ cut-down that tree. Those trees must be cut down.¹ You will be safe nowhere. You will never be safe. I will give you twelve verses to be learned-by-heart.¹¹ How many verses am I to learn-by-heart?¹² It is uncertain, how-many¹⁰ there were (*of them*.) No wise man¹³ trusts uncertain fortune. The arrow did not hit its mark. How many sheep have been killed by the wolf? I will ask how-many¹⁰ sheep the wolf has bitten. I will wait till¹⁴ you answer me. After⁹ the wolf had bitten three sheep, he was driven-away by the shepherds. How many arrows have you?

¹ S. 163.² S. 18.³ Num quis; or an quisquam.⁴ S. 168.⁵ S. 176.⁶ S. 45.⁷ S. 134, 135.⁸ S. 166.⁹ S. 251.¹⁰ S. 49.¹¹ S. 172.¹² Are to-be-learned-by-heart by me.¹³ Nemo sapiens.

Verbs of trusting govern the dat.

¹⁴ S. 249.

EXERCISE 14.

[*Mihi, tibi, sibi*, may sometimes be rendered 'my,' 'your,' 'his,' or 'his own.']

Hanc epistolam meâ manu scripsi. Num glupsisti pomâ, quæ in horto carpsimus? Hic puer pecuniam sumpsit a patre, eamque inter pauperes distribuit. Pauci milites in acie remanserant. Quid dixisti? Quis vobis futurum prædixit? Cæsar milites in aciem eduxerat. Hic homo me torvo vultu adspexit. Imperator victus ipse sibi pectus gladio transfixit. Athenienses Socratis damnati pedem ferro vinxerunt. Romani provincias suas duro imperio rexerunt. Nauta quidam Britannicus nuper in oceâno insulam detexit. Nuntius ille valde auxerat formidinem. Veteres poëtæ tempora sibi lauru cinxerunt. Poëtæ quidam pulchras finxerunt imagines. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum. Telum hostis aurem strinxit militis, qui ipse gladium non strinxerat.

I had written the letter with my own hand, (S. 177). It is certain that¹ the letter was written with his own hand.

must² join battle with the Germans. The weight of its fruit (*p/l.*) has bent-down the boughs of the tree. We have derived new hope from our changed circumstances. The besieged have propped-up their tottering walls with added works. Cicerō crushed the Catilinarian conspiracy, which had shaken the whole city. * When a change of circumstances has taken-place,⁴ (*partic.,*)⁵ our plans should be changed.³ * Of how great importance is it to me⁶ that⁷ the plans of the enemy *should*⁸ be changed. * Of how great importance is it to the citizens,⁹ to strengthen their tottering walls with works! The war waged by Hannibal drew after it a change of affairs in Italy. The remains of the forces must² be carried⁹ in-ships (*abl.*) to Italy. I have often laughed-at the vanity of men. What¹⁰ a multitude of men has flowed-together into the city!

1 S. 19.

2 To join battle with, *prælium committere* (mls, miss) cum.

3 S. 163.

4 Has been made.

5 S. 168.

6 Quanti meâ interest. S. 91.

7 S. 16.

8 C. 3.

9 Syn. 3.

10 C. 21.

EXERCISE 16.

[Perf. in *ui*.—See Syntax, Rules 13, 14.]

Num fores crepuerunt? Multi pauperes nunquam in molli cubili cubuerunt. Eques equum ferocem calcâri domuit et freno. Pedem dolentem manu fricui. Hominum illustrium lacunaria ebôre micuerunt et auro. In sacris Cybêlæ tympana sonuerunt et cornua. Jupiter tonuit. Hoc vetui, illud jussi. Romani pueros exercuerunt acri militiâ. Sapientes poëtæ admiscuerunt utile dulci. Sæpe te monui, sed tu non audivisti. Cur non tacueras? Non diu Græci incultos mores majorum suorum retinuerunt. Pyrrhus Romanos terruit elephantis in aciem productis. Ver maria aperuit navigantibus. Cæsar togâ caput operuit, et ictibus mucronum se præbuit.

The flame has crackled on the hearth. We have lain-down on (*in*) the soft grass. There was no-one, *but*¹ lay-down on the soft grass. We have rubbed our tables with oil. On that night,² no star shone (*in*) the whole heaven. Ought³ not⁴ our desires to be restrained? Hills and valleys resounded with the cries of the combatants. Has it

thundered? What have you forbidden? We have rubbed our bodies with oil. We have exercised our bodies in (*abl.*) childish games. Fate has often mixed joy with sorrow. There is need of⁵ a gentle reproof. I will present you with a book. Pity⁶ the poor. * You will repent of your folly.⁷ * It is of very great importance to you,⁸ *that*⁹ the city *should*¹⁰ be fortified. An eagle flying on-high had terrified the timid doves. Will¹¹ a dove terrify an eagle? [No.] Some deserters have discovered the plans of the enemy, (*pl.*) It is certain that⁹ the plans of the enemy have been discovered by a certain deserter. I have¹² six doves. How-many doves have¹³ you? It cannot be doubted, that¹² he pities the poor. There was need⁵ of a much¹⁴ gentler reproof.

¹ S. 32.² S. 143.³ S. 164.⁴ S. 45.⁵ S. 79.⁶ S. 88.⁷ S. 94.⁸ S. 91.⁹ S. 16.¹⁰ C. 3.¹¹ S. 46.¹² S. 114.¹³ S. 19.¹⁴ S. 202.

EXERCISE 17.

Græci et Romani veteres multos coluerunt deos. Socrates in carcere de immortalitate animi disseruit. In illo prælio equites nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. Romani gentibus fere omnibus tributa imposuerunt. Ex pugnâ Cannensi Pœni annûlis aureis occisorum equitum Romanorum modios aliquot compleverunt. Eodem anno L. Mummius Corinthus, P. Scipio Carthaginem delevit (deleverunt.) Pater flevit de morte filii. Filia sub tiliâ nevit subtilia fila. Quid decrevistis? Decrevimus habitare in provinciâ. Has arbôres meâ manu sevi. Quum mihi solatium misisti, flere jam desieram. Cur sprevisi munera a patre tibi promissa? Leo uno impetu prostravit tigridem. Hanc viam jumenta triverunt et homines.

Has not¹ my prudence snatched our country from (*e*) the hands of a tyrant? The boy is going-to-cultivate (*C. 37*) his² little-garden. He has spoken much (*multum*) about the nature of things. Who has distinguished-himself above³ the rest in this contest? This disease has carried-off many men. I will inquire of the physician how-many⁴ are dead

peium devicit: utriusque belli rebus gestis nomen ejus inclaruit.

Distinguished poets lived in¹ the age of Augustus. We have the writings of Virgilius,² Horatius, Ovidius, and others. Asinius Pollio had invited Virgilius to the city, where he became-acquainted with³ Mæcenas⁴ and Augustus. Virgilius recommended Horatius to Mæcenas. So the one⁵ flourished by the friendship of the other: one obliged the other. A long life did not fall-to-the-lot of either:⁶ but posterity has bestowed- equal honors -upon them both.⁷ Who would snatch⁸ the palm from either this or that, or bestow- greater praise -upon any⁹ Roman poet? Ovidius finished his life in exile on the Black Sea, because he had offended Augustus by his verses. He is distinguished for³ the fertility of his genius and the beauty of his verses; but many of (*ex*) his writings displease¹⁰ a modest and pure mind.—Who is there who can deny,¹¹ *that* great poets lived in the age of Augustus?—The poets who flourished in the age of Augustus, were much¹² more distinguished than (those) who lived afterwards.

¹ In what case does the *time-when* stand? ² Proper names are given in their Latin forms. ³ C. 36. Is the prepos. used in English to be used after the Latin word, &c.? ⁴ Gen. 31s. ⁵ *The one—the other*, must each be translated by the proper case of *alter*. ⁶ Do not-either, by *neuter*, (neither.) ⁷ *Uterque, each*. to be used, of course, in the *sing.* ⁸ S. 213. ⁹ p. 146. ¹⁰ Appendix I. ¹¹ S. 234. ¹² S. 202.

EXERCISE 20.

[Learn the declension of *aiōē*, Anchises, *Ænēas*, poemā. Appendix II.—What is the Voc. of proper names in *iūs*?—What is the Voc. mas. of *meus*?]

O benigne Deus, quam multa tibi debemus beneficia! Quod vivimus, quod valemus, quod ex agris fruges nobis proveniunt, quod lumine suo sol omnia collustrat et fovet, quod pluviam nubes in arva demittunt, quis hæc omnia regit et temperat, nisi Deus? Cui rerum natura paret, nisi Deo? Ergo, mi fili, Deum semper coles, eique pio animo habebis gratiam.

Quid fecisti, mi Carole?—Epitōmen feci orationis ejus, quam heri legimus.—Num jam legisti Ovidii poemata?—

temere cuiquam credamus. Amemus patriam, pareamus magistratibus, consulamus bonis, nutriamus pauperes! Quid faciam? Ne doleam, quum tanta me premat calamitas? Hoc dii bene vertant! Utinam nemo te impediat, quominus ad me venias! Quis credat illud, quod prorsus incredibile est? Metuo, ne vos hoc faciatis, aut illud non faciatis.

We wish that¹ you should always obey² your parents, and love your brothers and sisters. It often happens that³ men commit atrocious crimes for-the-sake⁴ of a small gain. The tiger is so cruel, that,⁵ though⁶ impelled by no hunger, it tears-to-pieces men and beasts. You will take care, that⁷ you may not lead a miserable life through your own fault. Do you fear, that⁸ we shall betray your secrets? I do not fear, that⁹ you will not perform what you have promised. We learn the old languages, that⁹ we may practise our judgment, and cultivate our minds. Who doubts that¹⁰ *we ought to love even our enemies?¹¹ I will not prevent you from¹² calling-upon me every day. You shall tell me, how much¹³ I owe you. I don't-know whether¹⁴ he is awake or sleeping. We will ask ourselves first, what is-pleasing to the gods; then, what to-men. What shall we say, that we may prove our innocence? Take your arms, and fight for your country. May every one keep a pure conscience. It remains that⁹ each man should keep his conscience pure. I have¹⁵ a pure conscience. Balbus is no¹⁶ wiser than (*quam*) Caius. My name is Marcus.¹⁷

¹ See S. 16, note.² App. I.³ S. 17.⁴ Causâ.⁵ S. 17.⁶ Etiam, even.⁷ That—not, nē, subj.⁸ S. 22.⁹ S. 17.¹⁰ S. 19.¹¹ S. 163.¹² S. 43.¹³ S. 49.¹⁴ S. 51.¹⁵ S. 114.¹⁶ Nihilo. S. 202.¹⁷ S. 113.

EXERCISE 22.

Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superaverit. Nemo dubitat, quin Romani omnes populos fortitudine præstiterint. Scisne, quando Scipio Africanus Carthaginem deleverit (delērit)? Videbimus, quid de consilio nostro censueritis. Quum iterum te con-

EXERCISE 26.

O magne Alexander, domuisti tot gentes; age, effrenatam iracundiam dona! Augustus quum nuntium accepisset de clade Varianâ, exclamavit: Quintili Vare, redde mihi legiones meas. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium, et vide, ne levitate animi in perniciem ruas! Vos divites, adjuvate miseros, vestite nudos, satiate famelicos: pro his Deus nobis retribuet gratiam. Credite mihi, perficiemus negotium, si vires omnes intenderimus. Respondete ad interrogationes nostras. Nimium ne crede colori! Ne contemnite deos! Fac, quod tuum est facere! Dic, quid sentias! Educ, centurio, copias, et aciem instrue!

Rouse up the powers of your mind, when they *happen to be-asleep.¹ Honor your parents, and obey² their will. Come into my house, and tell me³ what⁴ you have learned. Take-care not⁵ to make a more-powerful person your enemy. *Be sure to get well⁶ as soon as possible.⁷ Pardon those who have offended you: and take care to make friends of enemies by kindness and good-conduct. Take-care not⁸ to betray confidence. Guard the gates, lest (*nē*) your enemies should suddenly attack the city.

¹ When by-chance (*forte*) they sleep.

² Append. I.

³ C. 13.

⁴ S. 49.

⁵ Nē.

⁶ Fac ut convalescas.

⁷ Quam primum, *as soon as possible*.

EXERCISE 27.

(37) The second forms of the imperative [*to, tote, nto*] are used in *laws, rules*, and other formal expressions of *duty or permission*.]

Cœlestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. Impius ne audeto placare donis iram deorum. Ubi nos laverimus, si placebit, lavato. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, neve urito. Virgines Vestales in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum. Pueros ne laudatote nimium: nam omne nimium nocet. Pueri bonos libros legunto quotidie, sed malis abstinento. Fratres et sorores se invicem amanto, et parentibus obediunto. Memoriam exercetote, et addiscitote quotidie aliquid. Quum hostem profli-gaveritis, ne sævitote in jacentem.

tibi ignoscam; nec temere addūcar, ut pœnam tibi remittam. Ab imbecilliore vincēris, quem contempseris. Non audiēris, nisi sapiens consilium dederis; nam stulta consilia negligentur aut rejiciuntur. A bonis omnibus diligemur, si bonis moribus excellemus. O poetæ præclari, Virgili atque Horati, semper in scholis legemini, quamdiu adolescentes literis erudientur! Quando hic labor difficillimus finietur!

1 S. 203.

This town will be conquered in a short time. You will be despised by the lowest men, if you give yourself up¹ to the vilest lusts. The very lightest tasks will hardly be accomplished, if² you do not accustom¹ yourself to persevere in labor. We shall be deserted both by friends and relations, if³ we put every thing after money. You will be laughed-at by all sensible people, if you indulge in⁴ vanity. I' shall be greatly assisted by your means:⁵ but you' will receive advantage⁶ from your labor, and be rewarded with great praise. You will be taught by your masters, what road⁷ you should⁸ take. If you will continue in this path, you will be loved by your friends, and valued by your fellow-citizens. Whither shall I be led? When shall I reach the end of my journey? *It will not so much as be asked,⁹ what⁷ we have thought, but what we have done. We shall be attacked by our opponents; but our plans will not be overthrown. The gates of the city shall be carefully watched: guards shall be stationed on the walls: the enemy (*plur.*) shall be kept-off or driven-back. *It is of great importance to me¹⁰ that you should (C. 3) understand this.

¹ Fut. perf.

² If not, nisi.

³ S. 214.

⁴ App. I.

⁵ Opera, (*sing.*)

⁶ Fructum capere (ex.)

⁷ S. 49.

⁸ S. 166.

which governs the dat.

⁹ Ne rogabitur quidem: 'it will not even be asked.'

¹⁰ S. 91.

EXERCISE 31.

Hæc narratio adeo est fabulosa, ut a nemine credatur. Non sum tam imprūdēns ut verbis speciosis decipiar. Vic-

tus es, miles : rogato victorem, ut vita tibi condonetur. Spe fallaci, muliēres, deceptæ estis ; cavete, ne iterum decipiamini. Quam multa a veteribus scriptoribus nobis tradita sunt, quæ adeo sunt fabulis contexta, ut a nemine sano pro veris habeantur ! Utinam quam primum hoc metu liberer, quo sic crucior, ut pæne delirare videar. Difficillimum est efficere, ut simul omnibus probemur. Ab amicis sic deserti sumus, ut ab inimicis prorsus opprimamur. Discedito ab impröbis, ne pravitate eorum inficiaris, (-e.) Magistratus sapienter administranto rempublicam, cives autem parento legibus ; ita utrisque optime consultum erit, ut nec publica salus turbetur, nec privati singulorum injustitiâ vexentur. Bonæ leges sanciantur a principibus, quibus summum imperium ideo creditum est, ut bene consulatur reipublicæ, (S. 135.)

All men are so formed by nature, that¹ the powers of body and mind are strengthened by exercise. Who is so stupid as not² to perceive, with how-much (*quantus*) wisdom and goodness the world is governed !³ We have asked, whether⁴ you were loved or shunned by your schoolfellows. You are *too sensible to be excited⁵ to anger by the invectives of the senseless. You are *too unfeeling to be moved⁶ by our tears. We are *too-sorely afflicted by these misfortunes to be soon restored⁷ to our former state. I am so loaded with business, that¹ I am almost oppressed (by it.) Be content with your lot, that you may be reckoned among the wise. You should⁸ be more industrious, that the powers of your mind may be better exercised. What am I to do ?⁹ shall I ask,¹⁰ or¹¹ let-myself-be-asked (*say*, or be asked ?)

¹ S. 17. ² Ut (*or qui*) non intelligat. ³ S. 49. ⁴ S. 51. ⁵ 'More-sensible than that (*quam ut*) you should be excited,' (*subj.*)—Remember that *should* is a doubtful sign, and that whether the *imperf.* or *pres. subj.* should be used, depends on the tense of the preceding verb. ⁶ 'More unfeeling than that you should be moved.' ⁷ 'More sorely afflicted than that we should, &c.' ⁸ S. 61. ⁹ S. 213. ¹⁰ Rogemne. ¹¹ Anne.

EXERCISE 32.

Minus curare solemus, quod adest, quam quod futurum est, quia, quod adest, oculis videmus, sed nescimus, quid

futurum sit. Metuo, ne in hoc negotio falsâ spe decepti sitis, quoniam nihil vobis succedere videtur. Ubi victoria amissa est, nihil refert, quot in prælio cæsi aut in fugâ capti sint. Ad virtutem nihil interest, quo loco aut quibus parentibus nati simus. Hodie nemo in domo est, a quo non sim interrogatus, quomodo e tanto periculo servatus sim, quique homines auxilium mihi præstiterint. Non ita generati a naturâ sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esse videamur; sed ad severitatem potius, et ad quædam studia graviora et majora. Nam ita est a Deo institutum, ut vita hominis non hoc terrestri curriculo terminetur, sed ut animæ etiam post mortem corporis vita futura sit. Simul ac anima a corpore sejuncta fuerit, illud quidem torpebit, sed hæc in æternum vivebit.

Let us see how-many¹ warriors are left in the city; and how the guards are placed on the walls, and before the gates. Since² the town is well fortified both by nature and art,³ and defended by a strong force, it will not easily be taken. Since⁴ we are surrounded on-all-sides by enemies, it will be difficult to find a means-of-escape. You will not be reproached *for having been invited to dinner by no prince;⁴ but you will be justly reproached, if⁵ you court the favor of the great, that you may be invited. As soon as⁶ this letter is read, (*fut. perf.*.) you will perceive whom⁷ you have had for⁸ friends, and whom for⁸ enemies, and from what (*quantus*) danger (App. I.) you have been snatched. We shall at all times be contented with our lot, if we accustom ourselves (*fut. perf.*) to look- not -at those who are placed in a higher rank, but (at) those, to whom fortune has denied still more (than to us): for no one is so miserable, that⁹ many do not appear to be more miserable still.

¹ S. 49.² Quum with *subj.*³ Et opere, abl. of *opus*.⁴ That (*quod*) you have been invited.⁵ S. 214.⁶ S. 251.⁷ S. 49.⁸ Omit *for*, and put *friends* and *enemies* in apposition to *whom*.⁹ S. 17.

EXERCISE 33.

Romæ aliquamdiu penes reges summum imperium fuit
Quorum postremus, Tarquinius Superbus, quum a Bruto

et Tarquinio Collatino expulsus esset, consules creati sunt bini in annos singulos. Id factum est anno ducentesimo decimo ab urbe conditâ. Sed paullo post, quum a patriciis crudelius sæviretur in plebem, eaque perpetuis bellis occupata ære alieno premeretur, denique seditio mota est. Plebs in montem sacrum secessit anno ducentesimo sexagesimo, nec prius in urbem rediit, quam a patriciis promissa essent, quæ postulabat. Postulabat autem, ut æs alienum omne in tabulis deleteretur, utque tribuni crearentur, qui contra superbiam patriciorum causam plebis agerent, legesque iniquas vetarent. Quæ quum concessa essent, aliquamdiu quidem plebs suâ conditione contenta esse videbatur, sed mox altiora petebat, ut in omni genere jura patriciorum et plebeiorum æquarentur, nec jam ordinum discrimen esset.

Canuleius, a tribune of the people, brought-forward a bill,¹ that mixed marriages of the patricians and the plebeians should be permitted.² This law was carried in the 310th year *from the building of the city.³ At the same time (some) new tribunes brought forward a bill, that one⁴ of the consuls should be chosen from the plebeians. This proposal excited the anger of the patricians to such-a-degree,⁵ that⁶ it was resolved to elect, instead of consuls, military tribunes⁷ with⁸ consular power. Thus it happened,⁹ that for many years together¹⁰ no consuls were elected at Rome. But when (*quum*) in the year 378, that proposal¹¹ was renewed (*plup. subj.*) by Caius Licinius Stolo and Lucius Sextius Lateranus, (two) tribunes of the people, the patricians were at-last compelled to share the consulate with plebeians. But that the pain of this lost privilege might be in-some-measure¹² lessened, the patricians sought-for new honors for themselves. Accordingly in the same year two new magistrates were created, from which the plebeians should be excluded, (*subj.*) the prætorship, and the dignity of Curule Ædile. Nevertheless,¹³ sixty years afterwards¹⁴ all the rights were made common to the patricians and the plebeians.

¹ Rogationem promulgare.

² From (*ab*) the city built.

³ Tribunes of the soldiers.

⁴ Through many years.

⁵ Nihilò secius.

⁶ Concēdere, (cess, cess.)

⁷ Alter, (one of *two*.)

⁸ S. 78.

⁹ Rogatio.

¹⁰ S. 146, 147.

¹¹ Adeo.

¹² Ita factum est, (ut,) S. 17.

¹³ Aliquā ex parte.

EXERCISE 35.

Exorare, mi pater! ignosce temeritati filii! compesce iram!—O stulti homines, docemini tandem aliquando quam miseros vos libidinum dominatio faciat!—Romæ lex erat his verbis scripta: Nemo in urbe sepelitor, neve ur̃itor. Solon hanc legem sanxerat: Qui in bello occubuerint, publice sepeliuntur. Hanc ego vobis legem dico: Si quid utile in rempublicam acturi estis, difficultatibus ne deterreminor. Audi, mi fili, ab improbis ne corrumpitor, neve flagitiis eorum contaminor!

What am I to do?¹ shall I beat,² or be beaten?—Be beaten.—Shall we entreat,¹ or be entreated? Let him who returns³ to his obedience, be exempted from punishment: let him who continues in his crime be punished. Let the guilty be kept in custody; the innocent be dismissed. Let not yourselves be withheld from⁴ doing good, even-when⁵ men threaten you with evil.⁶ Let the torch be lighted.⁷ Let pleasures be despised.⁸ If⁹ he were of a brave mind,¹⁰ he would despise⁸ those dangers.

¹ S. 213.⁵ Etiam si⁸ S. 216.² Feriam: anne feriar.⁶ 'Threaten evil to you.'¹⁰ S. 78.³ Fut. perf.⁷ Syn. 2.⁴ S. 43.⁹ Syn. 5.

EXERCISE 36.

Phocion magnus Græcorum imperator fuit eo tempore, quo Philippus, Macedōnum rex, totam Græciam suo imperio subicere conatus est. Qui quamquam non adūlabatur populo, quod ceteri faciebant, tamen sæpius ad imperium vocatus est, quam alius quisquam. Pueros semper hortamur, ut bonos mores imitentur, malos fugiant et aversentur. Adversabimur illis, qui mala reipublicæ minentur; boni bonis semper auxiliabuntur. Sulla, qui Marium in bello Jugurthīno comitatus fuerat, postea acerbissimus ejus adversarius exstitit. In magno timore eram, ne inimici vobis insidiarentur; quod quum factum non sit, gratulor. Magnos homines qui æmulatus fuerit, non inter pessimos numerabitur. Quid gloriemini alienā virtute, quum propriam laudem meru-

eritis, quam cives omnes admirantur? Sæpe recordare, quid Deo, quid parentibus, quid patriæ debeas, ut omni tempore gratum animum ostendas. Consolamini miseros; hortamini pavidos; auxiliamini laborantibus! In rebus sacris nemo jocator. Jure reprehensi ne indignantor.

Do you mean the same as¹ the rest? If² you had not despised my advice, you would not now need consolation.³ Demosthenes, the most celebrated orator of the Greeks, exhorted the Athenians to support⁴ their allies in (good) time, against Philip, the king of the Macedonians: but they¹ hesitated, and *let their enemy escape⁵ out-of (e) their hands. You will be surprised, in how short a time we have completed⁶ so great a work. I am in great fear that⁷ wicked men are plotting against us. Take care *not to imitate⁸ those who take-pride in⁹ empty things. Don't wonder that¹⁰ I have not returned from the city before-this; ¹¹ many affairs have detained me. Pray the gods to give⁴ you a prosperous return. Do not rejoice, *when it goes ill with others.¹² Men should remember¹³ a kindness received.

¹ That is, 'the same which,' (quod.) &c.

² If-not, nisi with subj.

³ App. I.

⁴ 'That (ut) they should support.' See S. 41.

⁵ 'Sent their enemy-forth' (hostem e manibus emittere; nisi, nilsum.)

⁶ S. 49.

⁷ S. 22.

⁸ Nē with subj.

⁹ C. 36.

¹⁰ Quod. S. 20.

¹¹ Earlier, comparat. of Mature.

¹² It goes ill with me: in rebus adversis versor.

¹³ Meminerint, used as an imperative. See App. I.

EXERCISE 37.

Deus tuetur et moderatur res omnium hominum, et universum mundum gubernat. Quid verebimini, ne nobis ingrati venissetis, quibus nemo unquam venit exoptatio? Miserere pauperum, ut olim Deus misereatur tui. Nemo libenter fatetur, quod fateri nisi cum dedecore aliquo sui non potest. Qui multa pollicitus est, caveat, ne promissorum obliviscatur. Binæ a Deo hominibus datæ sunt aures, ora autem singula, ut plus audirent quam loquerentur. Romæ qui consulatu functi erant, dicebantur consulares; qui præturâ, prætorii; ædiles qui fuerant, ædilitii; quæstores, quæstorii. Quique justo prælio cum hoste congressi [erant et] quinque millia hostium interfecerant, honorem triumphi adi-

you will, without doubt, acquire the power of writing and speaking Latin.⁴ By running, by suffering hunger⁵ and thirst, our bodies grow accustomed to endure the greatest hardships. In disputing it becomes (us) always to observe moderation; and to conquer ambition by our desire of discovering the truth. Your wish to contend⁶ with me⁷ has ruined you. Wisdom is to be considered the art of living. I have not time⁸ for answering.⁹ By bearing injuries you will deserve greater praise than by revenging (them.)

¹ S. 161.² Inter ambulandum.³ C. 6.⁴ Latine, adv.⁵ To suffer hunger, *esurire*; to suffer thirst, *sitire*.⁶ Say, 'of contending.'⁷ Translate by *est*. S. 114.⁸ Say, 'of answering.'

EXERCISE 42. [*Learn scribenda epistola*, S. 162, 165.]

Natura animum hominis sensibus ornavit ad res percipiendas idoneis. Hannibal quum Capuam venisset, visendâ urbe magnam diei partem consumpsit. Multi in amicis parandis adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. Sunt nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingeniis non inutiles lusus. Creando Pontifici Maximo consules comitia habuere. Ab oppugnandâ Neapôli Hannibalem firmitas et altitudo mœnium absterruit. De contemnendâ morte multi egregie præcipiunt, qui ipsi nihil magis timent, quam mortem. Natura cupiditatem ingenuit homini veri videndi. Augendarum divitiarum stultissimi homines plerumque sunt cupidissimi. In suscipiendis negotiis difficilioribus magis anxii sumus, quam in agendis et perficiendis. Ad vim vi repellendam, licet etiam hominem interficere.

Romulus chose a site near the river Tiber for building¹ the city of Rome.² Water is better³ than wine for quenching thirst. For defending the walls of their cities, the ancients used machines, with which they shot stones and arrows against the besiegers. In curing coughs physicians used the tussilâgo, which received⁴ its name from-that-circumstance.⁵ The steersman, sitting at the stern, endeavours,⁶ by steering⁷ his ship, to avoid the rocks and dangers

tiam meam valde augebit. Quid jam facturi estis, quum tot vobis difficultates obstant? Cicero fugiturus erat ex Italiâ, quum emissi ab Antonio eum opprresserunt et interfecerunt. Nescio, quando uxor mea in urbem reditura sit, quum ruris amœnitas animum ejus tantis voluptatibus devinxerit. Ignorabamus, num consilium nostrum probaturi essetis, quod vobis incommodum futurum esset. Themistocles a civibus suis patriâ expulsus, confūgit ad Xerxem, cui promisit, se cum eo adversus Græcos pugnaturum esse. Verisimile est Persas apud Salaminem insulam victuros fuisse,¹ si unum diem exspectavissent. Cæsar Calpurniam, L. Pisonis filiam, successuri sibi in consulatu, in matrimonium duxit. Catilina urbem reliquit, mox cum pluribus rediturus.

¹ S. 224.

I was going to write to you, when it was announced, that¹ you were just arrived. As we were going-to-sail from Ostia to Naples, there arose suddenly a storm, which compelled us to remain in the harbor, and wait-for better weather. I don't know when² my brother will come; ³ but this⁴ I know, that¹ he has already set-out from the town (where-he-resides.⁵) We hear that¹ you have been residing at Corinth for-some-time, and are now about-to-return to Athens. In summer many persons leave the town, to dwell⁶ in the country: ⁷ but when (*ubi*) the weather⁸ ceases (*perf.*) to be warm, return again from the country to the city. I met your brother just-as⁹ he was going-on-board the ship, in which he has sailed to (*in*) America.

¹ S. 16.
⁴ from his town.

² S. 49.

³ Part. in rus with sim.

⁶ Ut with subj.

⁴ Illud.

⁷ S. after 160.

⁵ Say

⁸ Tempus anni.

⁹ Just as, quum maxime.

EXERCISE 46.

Valerius Maximus Fabium Rullianum, quinque consulatibus cum magnâ laude functum, hominem dicit propter virtutem et merita admirabilem. Aliquando noctu Romæ nuntiatum est, Sabinorum exercitum populaturum ad Aniënem fluvium pervenisse; ibi jam expilatas villas in-

esse ab insidiis tutos non esse arbitrabantur. Duce P. Cornelio Scipione Romani in Africam trajecerunt, ubi, pugnâ ad Zamam commissâ, pax petentibus Carthaginiensibus data est. C. Cæsar, vir summæ in re militari prudentiæ, milites suos hortatus, ne fugientes hostes incautius persequerentur, legiones sub colle subsistere jubet, dum ipse equites in terga hostium circumduxisset: quod ubi factum esse cognovissent, instructâ acie in collem eniterentur. Sævi bellatores, victoriâ reportatâ, urbes diripiunt, et agros devastant, ac ne inermi quidem parcentes trucidant homines.

*When the sea is calm,¹ anybody² can steer a ship. *By the advice of Cato,³ the ambassadors of the Athenians were banished from Rome, because by their incredible eloquence⁴ they persuaded the people to receive falsehood for truth.⁵ *When spring returns,⁶ your little-garden will be adorned with the most beautiful flowers. Do not boast, *when you have conquered a weaker person.⁶ *When the victory is lost,⁶ it *makes-no-difference⁷ how-many have been killed. Being born for (*ad*) greater things, depart from the wicked, lest you should be corrupted by their character.⁸ By the advice of my uncle, I have run to you. Cannot anybody² be a pilot, *when the sea is calm?¹ We must think about the true welfare⁹ of the soul.

¹ 'The sea (being) calm,' (tranquillus,) *abl. abs.*

⁴ *Ars dicendi.*

⁶ *Mores, pl.*

⁵ *Falsa pro veris accipere.*

⁹ *Sal-us, ütis.*

² *S. 192.*

⁶ *Abl. abs.*

³ *Catone auctore.*

⁷ *S. 91.*

EXERCISE 50. [See S. 94.]

Is labor utilis est, qui auctori laudem fert, aliis utilitatem. Quid fers manu, mi fili? Pecuniam et vasa refero, quæ fur e domo nostrâ nuper abstulerat. Hunc ego dolorem æquo animo ferrem, nisi gravior¹ esset, quam ut ferri omnino possit. Fer opem miseris, et vide, ne te sero latî auxilii pœniteat. Factum est æquitate Aristidis, ut summum imperium a Lacedæmoniis transferretur ad Athenienses. Miseret me tui, quod tanta tibi injuria illata est,

III. READING LESSONS,

CONSISTING OF

FABLES AND ANECDOTES, &c.

1.

Boves.

PASCEBANTUR una tres boves robusti in maximâ concordîâ. Itaque facile ab omni ferarum incursione tuti erant, ut ne leones quidem aggrêdi eos auderent. Orto autem inter eos dissidio et solutâ amicitîâ, singuli validioribus bestiis prædæ fuerunt.—Hæc fabula docet, quantum prosit concordia.

2.

Vulpes et Uva.

Vulpes, extremâ fame coacta, uvam appetebat ex altâ vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discedens ait : Nondum matura est, nolo acerbam sumere.—Hoc illi exemplum sumant, qui, quæ facere non possunt, verbis elēvant.

3.

Cervus ad fontem.

Cervus quum vehementer sitiret, ad fontem accessit, suâque in aquis imagine conspectâ, cornuum magnitudinem et varietatem laudabat, crura vero gracilia et exilia vituperabat. Hæc cogitanti supervēnit leo. Quo viso, cervus aufūgit, et leoni longe præcurrit. Et quamdiu in nudâ planitiæ erat, nullum ei ab hoste imminebat periculum ; ubi

vero ad nemus venit opacum, inter virgulta cornibus adhæsit. Ita quum celeritate pedum uti non posset, captus est a leone et misere laniatus. Tum moriturus: *O me desipientem, inquit, cui ea displicerent, quæ me servarunt, placerent autem, quæ me perdiderunt!*

4.

Vulpes et Corvus.

Corvus quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adoritur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit: quam vulpes statim rapuit, atque irrîdens dixit. *Heus, corve! nihil tibi deest præter mentem.*

5.

Senex et Mors.

Senex quidam ligna in silvâ ceciderat, et, fasce in humeros sublato, domum redire cœpit. Quum autem fatigatus esset et onere et itinere, deposuit ligna, et secum considérans miserias senectutis et inopiæ, clarâ voce invocavit mortem, ut se ab omnibus malis liberaret. Mox adfuit mors, quid velit interrógans. Tunc senex perterritus: *Nihil volo, inquit, nisi ut hunc fascem lignorum humeris meis imponas.*

6.

Mures et Felis.

Multi mures in cavo pariète commorantes, contemplabantur diu felem, quæ capite demisso et tristi vultu placide recumbebat. Tunc unus ex iis: *Hoc animal, inquit, admodum benignum et mite videtur. Quid, si allôquar, et familiaritatem cum illo contrāham?* Hæc quum dixisset et propius accessisset, a fele captus et dilaceratus est. Tunc ceteri hoc videntes secum dicebant. *Non est profecto vultui temere credendum.*

vir?—Quid? tu in eo sitam esse vitam beatam putas?—Ita prorsus existimo: *bonos beatos, impröbos miseros esse.*—Miser¹ ergo Archelaus?—Certe, si injustus.¹

13.

Egregie dicta.

Drusus quum ædificaret domum, promitteretque ei architectus, ita se eam ædificaturum,² ut nemo in eam despicere posset: *Tu vero, inquit, si quid in te artis est, ita compone domum, ut, quidquid agam, ab omnibus perspici possit.*—Plato cuidam narranti, esse quosdam, qui ipsum maledictis insectentur: *At ego, inquit, sic vivam, ut nemo istis fidem habeat.*—Epictetus interrogatus, quis esset dives? *Cui, inquit, satis est, quod habet.*—Socrates, in pompâ quum magna vis auri argentique ferretur: *Quam multa non desidero!* inquit.—Antoninus Pius hanc celebratam Scipionis sententiam sæpe in ore habebat, *malle se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes interficere.*

14.

Acute dicta.

Agis, rex Lacedæmoniorum, audiens, quosdam horrere hostium multitudinem, ait: *non percontandum esse, quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint.* Idem interrogatus, quot milites haberet? *quot sufficiunt, inquit, ad fugandos hostes.*—Quum quidam Lacedæmonios hortaretur, ut bellum Macedonibus inferrent, commemoraretque victorias, quas de Persis reportassent, Eudamidas dixit: *hoc facere, idem esset, ac³ si quis, devictis mille ovibus, cum quinquaginta lupis pugnaret.*—Aristippum philosophum rogavit quidam, ut filium suum erudiret. Quum vero ille pro mercede petiisset quingentas drachmas, pater, deterritus pretio, quod avaro et rudi homini nimium videbatur: *Tanti, inquit, emere mancipium possum.* Tum philosophus: *Eme, inquit, et habebis duo.*

15.

Libère dicta.

Apelles, pictor sui temporis clarissimus, Alexandrum

¹ Sc. est.² Sc. esse.³ As.

pinxerat vehentem equo. Quam imaginem quum rex minus laudaret, quam meruerat artifex, equus Alexandri interea adductus picto equo sic adhinniit, quasi verus esset equus. Tum Apelles: *O rex, inquit, equus tuus pingendi peritior, quam tu, videtur esse.*—Alexander olim quum piratam comprehensum interrogaret, quo jure maria infestaret, ille: *Eodem, inquit, quo tu orbem terrarum. Sed quia id ego parvo navigio facio, latro vocor; tu, quia magnâ classe et exercitu, imperator.*—Quum in regali solio sederet Cræsus, pretiosissimâ veste indutus, Solonem interrogavit, an quid unquam pulchrius vidisset? *Gallos, inquit ille, et phasianos et pavones: naturali enim nec imitabili colore et pulchritudine fulgent.*

16.

Damon et Pythias.

Damon et Pythias, Pythagoræi, tam fidèlem inter se amicitiam junxerunt, ut mori parati essent alter pro altero. Quum eorum alteri Dionysius tyrannus diem necis destinavisset, et is, qui morti addictus esset, paucos sibi dies ad res suas ordinandas postulavisset; vas factus est alter, ut, si ille non revertisset, moriendum esset ipsi. Omnes igitur, et imprimis Dionysius, novæ atque ancipitis rei exitum speculabantur. Appropinquante deinde definitâ die, nec illo redeunte, unusquisque stultitiæ tam temerarium sponsorem condemnabat. At vero quum alter ad diem se recepisset, admiratus eorum fidem tyrannus supplicio liberavit eum, qui morte erat plectendus, ac petivit, ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent.

17.

Augustus.

Græcus quidam Augusto, e Palatio descendenti, honorificum aliquod epigramma porrigere solebat, spe præmii. Id quum sæpe frustra fecisset, Augustus eum deterriturus breve epigramma suâ manu exaratum Græculo advenienti obviam misit. Ille, dum legeret, laudabat, et tum voce, tum vultu gestuque mirabatur. Deinde ad sellam accessit, quâ Cæ-

20.

Lysimachi fortitudo.

Lysimachus inter duces Alexandri illustri genere, sed longe magis virtute quam genere clarus erat. Quum Alexander Callisthenem philosophum miserandum in modum omnibus membris truncasset, et insuper cum cane in caveâ clausum circumferret, Lysimachus, qui eum audire atque ex ejus ore præcepta virtutis et sapientiæ percipere solitus erat, venenum ei dedit, in remedium calamitatum. Quod adeo ægre tulit Alexander, ut Lysimachum leoni objici juberet. Sed quum leo impetum fecisset in eum, Lysimachus manum amiculo involutam in os leonis immersit, arreptâque linguâ feram exanimavit. Quod quum nuntiatum regi esset, admiratio iræ successit, cariorēque habuit propter tantam constantiam.

21.

Animus generosus Fabricii.

Pyrri bello maximum exemplum est justitiæ in hostem a Romanis constitutum. Quum enim rex Pyrrhus populo Romano bellum ultro intulisset, quumque de imperio certamen esset cum rege generoso ac potente; perfûga ab eo venit in castra Fabricii, eique est pollicitus, si præmium sibi proposuisset, se, ut clam venisset, sic clam in Pyrri castra rediturum, et eum veneno necaturum. Hunc Fabricius reducendum curavit ad Pyrrhum; idque factum ejus a senatu laudatum est.

22.

Piso Orator et Servus.

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis præceperat, ut tantum ad interrogata responderent, nec quidquam præterea dicerent. Evēnit, ut Clodium, qui tunc magistratum gerebat, ad cœnam invitari juberet. Hora cœnæ instabat; ade-rant ceteri convivæ omnes, solus Clodius expectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, an veniret. Quum denique jam desperaretur

Nuncupare (*probably from nomine capere*) is used of solemnly and formally pronouncing a man's name, for instance in naming a man one's heir, &c.

VOCABULARY TO 11.

Word-building.]—I. To make sound, *from sanus* (sanare, to cure). Reading; perusal, *from lect, supine root of legere* (lectio, 43). *From quærere, seek, form to seek-to* (ac-quirere, quisiv, quisit: *seek to myself, gain, earn, &c.*).

[Voc. on some Verbs that form their perf. in *i.*]

To help-to (ad-jūvare, to assist). To move-to (admōvēre). To see-into (in-vidēre, envy). To come to (advēnire). To come-upon (in-venire; to find, invent: of things not sought). To drink-out; drink-up (ebibēre, 11). To eat-up (com-ēdere, 7). To do-thoroughly (per-ficēre, fēc, sect, perform, complete, 16). To give or put to (ad-dere, addidi, additum, add). To give or put round (circum-dāre, dēdi, dātum, surround). To stand-before (præ-stāre, præ-stīti, præstātum, to be better, excel,—perform.—præstare se, show or prove oneself). To promise-back (re-spondēre, re-spondi, sponsum: generally to answer). To learn thoroughly (ediscere, learn by heart). To touch-to (attingere, tīgi, tactum, reach).

⚔ OBS. Oc-cīdo, occīdi, oc-cāsum, fall, perish—
set = (ob-cādo).

Oc-cīdo, oc-cīdi, oc-cīsum, slay = (ob-cædo).

VOCABULARY TO 12.

Word-building.]—I. Abstract subst. *from diligens* (diligentia, 61). Adv. *from sup. root of stare* (stat-im, 123, immediately: that is, while you are standing where you are¹) Act-of-going-within; passage into; entrance (intro-itus 44). To come-thoroughly (per-vēnire, arrive at). To sit against (ob-sīdēre, sēd, sess, besiege). To-hither, hither-to (ad-huc). Bravely, courageously, *from fortis* (fortiter, 121).

¹ So the Germans use *stehenden Fusses* (on standing foot) for immediately.

[Go through the degrees of comparison of *fortiter* (*fortius, fortissime*).]

II. Exercise *from* *exercit*, *sup. root of* *exercēre* (*exercitus, that which is exercised; army*). To climb-to, *from* *scandere* (*ad-scendere: scend, scens*). Ascent (*ad-scensus, 44*). One who says-law (*jū-dex for jus-dex, 129*). Judgment (*ju-dicium, 137*). To set-loose-from: free-from (*ab-solvere; solv, solūt: acquit*). Acquittal (*ab-solūt-io, 43*). To do-completely (*con-ficere, fēc, fect: put-an-end-to; accomplish*).

VOCABULARY TO 13.

Word-building.—I. *Abst. subst. from* *multus* (*mult-i-tūdo, 63*). Commander, *from* *imperare* (*imperator, commander-in-chief*).¹ One who feeds, *from* *pascere*, *sup. root of* *pascere* (*pastor*). To cause flight, *from* *fūga* (*fugare, put-to-flight; rout*). A little needle, *from* *acus* (*aculeus: thorn, 66*). Un-certain (*in-certus*).

Ater, black: atrare, to make black: atramentum, that which makes black; or, is made black; ink.

[Vocabulary on Verbs forming their perfect in *si*.]

To write-down (*de-scribere: copy, describe*). To pluck-from (*de-cerpere, cerps, cerpt: pluck, gather*). To take-completely (*con-sūmere, consume, waste*). To wait-behind (*re-mānēre*). To fore-tell (*præ-dicere*). To lead out (*e-dūcere*). To look-to (*ad-spicere, spex, spect: behold*). To fix-through (*trans-figere, transfix*). To rule- or direct-out (*e-rigere, rex, rect: erect*). To un-cover; discover (*de-tēgere*). To shut-back; unshut (*re-cludere, clūs, clus: open*). To sprinkle-to (*ad-spergere, spers, spers: sprinkle*). To yield-back (*re-cēdere, retire, withdraw*). To press-against (*op-primere, press, press: oppress; fall-upon an enemy unexpectedly with a crushing force*). To burn-completely (*com-būr-ēre, 7*). To shake-thoroughly, *from* *quatio* (*con-cūtēre, concutio, cuss, cuss, to shake*).

¹ Given as a title to a victorious Roman general.

² The *h* belongs to the original root, as appears from our *burn*.

VOCABULARY TO 14.

Word-building.—I. To bestow in different directions, *from* tribuere (dis-tribuere). An Athenian, *from* Athēnæ (Athēniensis, 94).

Pro-vinc-ia, *province*—a country gained by *onward conquest*: pro, vincere.

II. To go-out (exire, ex-eo). A good-deed, benefit (beneficium, 139). To bind-down (de-vincire, *oblige*: bind a man by services rendered him). That which is dug out; trench, *from* foss, *sup. root of* fodere (foss-a).¹ Act or state of knowing; thing known, *from* nōt, *sup. root of* noscere (nōtio, *notion*).

VOCABULARY TO 15.

Word-building.—I. To go against or into (in-vādēre). Carthaginian, *from* Carthago (Carthaginiensis, 94). One who is in the state of having been taken (capt-ivus, 115, *captive*). Manliness, *from* vir (virtūs, 65: *courage, excellence, virtue*). Blandishment, *from* blandire, *verb from* blandus (blandimentum, 49). Body of citizens; state, *from* cīvis (cīvitas, 69). One who takes-first, *from* primus and capere (prin-ceps, 130; *prince, chief*: also as *adj.* first). *Subst. from* princeps, *to express the thing* (principium, *beginning*, 138). *Abst. subst. from* inops² (inopia, 61, *want of resources; want; destitution*). Muddy, *from* lutum, mud (lut-u-lentus, 103). To draw-together, (contrahere). Remains, *from* reliquus, left (reliquiæ). Inhabitant-of-a-town, *from* oppidum (oppidanus, 96).

II (1) Sta-gnum (that *which is of a standing nature*; sta-gēn-um. See 135, and note), *pool, pond*.

(2) Cācūmen [= acū-men, *from* acuere, *to sharpen* (see 48), with prefixed c], a sharp, pointed summit: top of trees, &c.

(3) Legatus (*past part. from* legare, *to delegate*), (1) an ambassador, (2) a lieutenant-general.

II. One who belongs or is subject to death (mort-ālis

¹ Properly fem. partic. agreeing with terra.

² Derivation of inops? [*in not; opes resources.*]

90). Emptiness, vanity, *from* *vanus* (*vanitas*, 60). Bitterness, *from* *acerbus*, *bitter* (*acerbitas*). That which is enjoyed, *from* *fruct*, *sup. root of* *fruo* (*fruct-us*, 44: *produce, fruit*, especially of trees). To bend-inwards (*in-flectere*, *bend-down*; *bend*). To shine-back; or shine much (*re-fulgēre*, *shine*). Conspiracy, *from* *con-jurare*, *to-swear-together* (*con-juratio*).¹ Relating to Catiline² (*Catilin-arius*; *Catilinarian*, or *Catiline's*, *gen.*). Change, *from* *mutare* to *change* (*mutatio*). To flow-together (*con-fluere*). To send-together (*com-mittere*).

Committere praelium (to send the battle together—followed by *cum*) may be variously rendered: to *join battle with*: to *engage*; to *commence* the engagement; to *give battle* (*to*), &c.

Jug-um (that which *joins* or *is joined*, *from* *jug*, simpler root of *jungere*) (1) *yoke*, (2) *range*, i. e. *connected line*, a *chain* (of hills, &c.)

[Vocab. on some Verbs with perf. *ui* and *vi*.]

Compound of ad and tonare (*at-tonare*: part. *attonitus*, *thunder-struck*; *astounded*). To be very-silent, *from* *tacere* (*re-ticēre*, *to be silent about*; *say nothing-about*).³ To hold-back (*re-tinēre*; also *retain*). To snatch out of (*eripere*, *ripi*, *reptum*).

VOCABULARY TO 16.

Word-building.—I. *From what does cubile, bed, couch, come?* (*cub-are*, *to lie down*.) *Form an abstr. substantive from milit*, *root of miles*, *soldier* (*militia*, 61; *miles* being an *adjective-substantive*). *Uncultivated*, *from cultus*, *part. of colo* (*in-cultus*, *rude*, *uncivilized*). *Draw-forth*; *draw-out* (*pro-dūcere*). *Stroke*, *from ict*, *sup. root of icere*, *to-strike* (*ictus*, 44).

Illustris (*in-luc-stris*, *dwelling-in-light*, 112), *illustrious*. *Lacunar*, *a panelled ceiling*,⁴ usually gilt·
from *lacuna*, *a hole*, from its *sunk panels*.

¹ Derivation of con-spiracy? [*Con-spirare*, to breathe together.]

² Catiline was a profligate Roman nobleman.

³ To hold one's tongue, *when one has something to say*, D. The re- may perhaps indicate that the speaking would have been in *reply* to some conduct, charge, &c., of another person.

⁴ Or a fret-work roof.

II. *Abstr. subst. from libet* (lib-ido, 46, lust). 'To sound-back-again (re-sonare, *resound*). Clamor; shouts, *from clamare* (clam-or, 42). Boyish, *from puer* (puerilis, 89). Joy; gladness, *from lætus* (læticia, 62). Blame, *subst. from reprehens, sup. root of reprehendere* (reprehensio). To make a present, *from don-um* (donare, *to present*). Fearful; timorous, *from pav-ère* (pav-idus, 82). One who has fled-across, *from trans and fugere* (trans-fûga, 58: *deserter*).

On high, in sublime, or sublime only.¹

VOCABULARY TO 17.

Word-building.—*Subst. from audâc, root of audax, bold, daring* (audacia, boldness, daringness, courage). Immortality, *from mortalis* (im-mortalitas). Prudence, *from the adj. prudens* (prudencia). That which is paid, *neut. partic. from tribuere* (tributum: tribute). To place-on: impose (im-ponere). *Adj. from Cannæ* (Cannensis, 94). Of gold; golden, *from aurum* (aureus, 98). To have-often, *from habere* (habit-are, 35: hence *to occupy regularly: to dwell-in*). Consolation, *from solât, root of solari* (solatium, 56). To give-forth (pro-mittere: hence *to promise*). *Verbal subst. from in, against, and petere, to seek, aim at, &c.* (impêtus; which is singular in not being formed from the root of the *supine*: it is of the fourth).

Jūmentum (for *jug-mentum*,² an animal that is yoked), a beast of burden.

Viam terere, to wear a road: to travel it often.

II. A contest, *from certare*³ (certamen, 48). Age, *from vetus* (vetustas, 60). To move-from, *from cedere* (decēdēre).

Sermo (related to *serere*, to connect), discourse.

VOCABULARY TO 18.

Word-building.—I. To grow-down (de-crescere, *decrease: of the moon, to wane*). To burst-forth, (prorumpere). Youth, as *abstr. subst. from juvenis* (juven-tūs, tūtis, 65)

¹ Cicero always used *sublime* without *in*.

² Or possibly for *juva-mentum* or *jut-mentum*, a help; an animal used by man to assist him in his labors. The derivation from *jugum* is the more probable one.

³ Certare is properly to make sure, from *certus*; a contest being for the settling of some disputed point.

Old-age, *from* senex (senectūs,¹ tūtis). *To leave-from* (delinquere, *to sin, transgress. Hence, delictum, a sin; a transgression*). The office of Consul (Consulatus, G. us; 68: consulship).

II. To grow cool, *from* ferverescere, *to grow hot* (de-fervescere, ferui and fervi). Without care (secūrus, 23). *Abstr. subst from* concors (concordia; *concord, harmony*). To place-back, *from* statuere (restituēre, stitu, stitūt, *restore*). Long, *as adj. from* diu, *for a long time* (diuturnus, 117). To burst-completely (cor-rumpēre, 7: *corrupt*). To drive-under, *from* agere (sub-igere, *subdue*). Wickedness, *from the anomalous adj.* nequam, *wicked* (nequitia). To give-away (de-dēre; dedere se, *to give oneself up to, &c. : to surrender*).

Quantopere (quanto opere: *with how much work*), *how much*. Securus ago, *I live in security* (vitam, *life, understood*). Neg-otium (nec-otium, *not leisure*), *business, affair*.

VOCABULARY TO 19.

Word-building.}—I. Writer, *from* scribere (scriptor, *author*). Writing (scriptum, *neut. partic.*). To stand-out (ex-stare, -stiti, *to be extant*). *Abstr. substantive from* elegans (elegantia). To yield-thoroughly (concedere). Truly, *from* verus, *true* (verē). That which is sharpened; point, *from* acuere (acūmen, 48: *sharpness, acuteness*). *Abstr. substantives from* utilis, innocens (utilitas, *utility, usefulness, use*; innocentia, *innocence*). To show-from (de-monstrare: *to show, to prove*). *Adj. from* domus, *home* (domesticus, *domestic, private*). Relating to a family (familiaris). Joking, *from* joci (jocundus, 80). *Abstr. substantives from* gravis and severus (gravitas, *gravity; severitas, seriousness*). To place-together (componere, *arrange, adjust*). Oratorical (oratorius). To dis-connect, *from* serere, *to join* (dis-serere, *to discuss*: the object of a discussion being to *separate* a thing from what it was mixed and confounded with). To place-before (pro-ponere). To establish-in (instituere, stitu, stitut: *to institute; to train*). *Abstr. subst. from* or-iri, *to arise* (origo, 47, *origin*). To draw-down (de-ducere, *to con-*

¹ Which seems to show that the gen. was originally senec-is.

VOCABULARY TO 21.

Word-building.]—I. *Form abstr. subst. from super-stit, root of superstes*¹ (super-stitio). To have- a thing -forth, *that is away from, from habere* (prohibere, hibere, hibeo; to ward-off, prevent). Knowledge; *from cognit, sup. root of cognoscere* (cognitio). Piety, *from pius* (pietas, 60). Not to know, *from scire* (ne-scire). To be-waiting-on, or against, *from manere* (imminere). It stands-before (præstat, it is better). Not friendly, *from amicus* (in-imicus, hostile: as subst. enemy). Believable, *from credere* (credibilis, credible). Incredible (incredibilis).

Prorsus (pro-versus, for-wards), thoroughly, quite.
 Utinam² (uti-nam) would that (with subj.).

II. It falls-to, *from cadere* (accidit, it happens, it happened). To drive-into (impellere; pūl, puls: impel). To give-forth (pro-dere, didi, ditum, betray). To cultivate thoroughly (ex-colere, cultivate). To come-together (convenire, trans. to visit). Verb of the first conjug. *from vigil awake* (vigilare, to be awake; to watch). Cruelly, *from crudelis* (crudeliter).³ From-thence (de-inde, thenceforth; then). To-thither (ad-eo, so). Knowledge, *from sciens, knowing* (scientia: conscientia; consciousness, conscience).

VOCABULARY TO 22.

Word-building.]—I. Strong, *from robur, strength* (robustus, 109). To give or put together (condere, didi, ditum) (1) to hide, (2) to found). To speak-against (contradicere contradict). To make-forward (pro-ficere, fēc, fect, to make progress).

Quo-mōdo (in what manner), how.

Iterum, a second time; once more; again.

Nihil curare, not to care at all.

Succensere, to be angry, does not come from censeo, but from succensus, kindled, part. of succendere. just as denseo, from densus.

¹ Superstes was perhaps used absolutely, as *superstes sui*, one who has survived himself: hence *superstitio* expresses the childish weakness of such a person.

² Uti is 'that,' and nam is a strengthening affix, added to many interrogatives, &c. Hence *utinam* is properly, 'that it were so!' 'Oh that it were so!'

³ Give the degrees of comparison of *crudeliter* [*crudelius, crudelissima*].

II. To make prosperous, *from* secundus, *favorable* (secundare). Return, *from* redit, *sup. root of* redeo (reditus, ūs).

To give a prosperous return, *reditum secundare*.
It goes ill with me, *in rebus adversis versor*.

VOCABULARY TO 37.

Word-building.]—I. Ungrateful, *from* gratus (ingratus). Thing promised, promise, *from* promittere (promissum). Dearness, *from* cārus, *dear* (caritas, affection).

Justum prælium, *a pitched battle* (i. e. not a mere skirmish).

II. *Subst. to express the act, from* rapere (raptus, ūs, *rape, robbery*). To rise to or against (adoriri, adort, *to fall on, to attack*). *Adv. from* communis (communiter). To make sound, *from* sanus (sanare, *to heal*).

To be named joint-king, *in consortium regni adscisci* (perf. *adscitus sum*).

VOCABULARY TO 38.

Word-building.]—I. Moderation: *from* temperans (temperantia). Intemperance (in-temperantia). In-active, *from* gnavus, *active* (i-gnavus, *sluggish, slothful*). Sloth, sluggishness, *from* ignavus (ignavia, *indolence, weakness of the will*). *Subst. to express the act from* remittere (remissio, remission).

To plead a cause, *causam dicere*.

Condemned to death, *capite damnatus* (condemned by the head). Also, *capitis damnatus*.

II. Not-never (non-nunquam, *sometimes*). To connect from *or* dis-connect, i. e. from *myself, from* serere (deserere, seru, sert), *to desert*.

VOCABULARY TO 39.

Word-building.]—I. *Abstr. subst. from* integr, *root of* integer, *whole* (integritas, *wholeness, entireness—integrity, uprightness*). To do-completely, *from* facere (con-ficere,

accomplish, complete). *Abstr. subst. from curs, sup. root of currere, to run* (cursus, ūs, *course*). *To take-to, from capere* (ac-cipere, cep, cept : *to receive*). *Cultivation, from cult, sup. root of colere* (cultus, *civilization*).

In-scitia (in, *not* : scire, *to know*), *ignorance*.

Con-stat (*it stands together, as a consistent fact*), *it is well known, allowed, &c.*

II. One who oppresses, *from oppress, sup. root of opprĭ-mere* (oppressor, *oppressor*).

VOCABULARY TO 40.

Word-building.]—I. *Adv. from accuratus* (accurate, *accurately*). *Give its degrees of comparison* (accuratius, accuratissime). *To touch-to, from tangere, (at-tingere, attĭg, attact, to touch, to attain, to reach)*. *Abstr. subst. from elegans* (elegantia).

Verum attingere, to hit or arrive at the truth.

Audita (*things heard*) may be translated by a relative sentence : ‘*what he had heard.*’

II. *To rattle-against, from crepare* (in-crepare, *to scold*). *To read-through, from legere* (per-legere, lĕg, lect).

V. QUESTIONS

ON

THE LATIN ACCIDENCE.

Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the page and paragraph.

To what question does the *nom.* answer? (To *who* or *what* with the verb.) To what question does the *gen.* answer? (To *whose?* *of what?*) To what question does the *dat.* answer? (To *for whom* or *what?* *to whom* or *what?*) To what question does the *acc.* after the verb answer? (To *whom?* or *what?* with the verb and its *nom.* case.) How is the *voc.* known? (The vocative denotes the person addressed by name: it is generally *stopped off* by commas.) To what questions does the *abl.* answer? (To the questions *with what?* *by what?* *when?* and *whence?* sometimes to *on what?* *from what?* *at what?* *in what?*) To what question does the *abl.* answer after a comparative? (To *than what?*)

When are nouns called common? (When they are used as *mas.* or *fem.* according as *males* or *females* are spoken of.) When are nouns called *epicene*? (When they are always of *one* gender, which cannot be altered to specify the sex.) *How then can the sex be specified?* (By adding *mas* or *femina*.)

Go through: *Musa*—*Magister*—*Puer*—*Dominus*—*Regnum*—*Nubes*—*Lapis* (*root*, *lapis*)—*Opus* (*root*, *oper*, *neut.*)—*Parens* (*root*, *parent*)—*Gradus*, *Facies*. What is the *voc.* of *Virgilius* (131)? of *filius* (131)? What cases are always alike in neuters? In what letter do these cases end in the plural?

What is the gender of nouns of the first (128) Mention some plurals of the first that have a sing. meaning (129, 29).

ferus (inferior, infimus or imus)—*superus* (superior, supremus or summus). What *compar.* and *superlat.* are related in meaning to the adv. *intus*? (interior, intimus)—to *citra*? (citerior, citimus)—to *ultra*? (ulterior, ultimus)—to *prope*? (propior, proximus)—to the Greek word *ὠκτός*, *swift*? (ocior, ocissimus.) What is the *superl.* of *prior*? (primus)—the comp. of *juvenis*? (junior)—of *senex*? (senior.) When must the comparison be formed by *magis*, *maxime*? (When the adj. ends in *us* pure.) When may an adjective in *us*, pure, form its comparison regularly? (When *qu*, which sounds like *kw*, precedes *us*: as, *antiquus*, *iniquus*.) What is used for the comparative of an adverb derived from an adjective? (The neuter of the comparative adjective.) What is the superlative of such an adverb? (It is formed by adding *ē* to the root of the superlative adjective.)

THE NUMERALS. [Page 142.]

What are *cardinal* numbers? (Those that answer to, *how many*?) What *ordinals*? (Those that mark *the place* that any individual holds in a *series*.) What *distributives*? (Those that answer to, *how many apiece*?) Are cardinal numbers declinable? (From 4 to 100 *not*: the names of the *hundreds* are, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, &c. *Mille* is indecl. as an *adj.*: but as a *subst.* has plur. *millia*, *ium*, *ibus*, &c.) Are the ordinals and distributives declinable? (Yes.) Give the first ten numerals in the three series; and the num. adverbs answering to *how many times* (142). Give them from 10 to 20 (172).

Give the Latin for 20: for 18. Do the '*teens*' end in *decim* or *decem*? Give the Latin for 11th, 12th, 13th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st. Give the Latin for *eleven apiece*, *twelve apiece*, *thirteen apiece*, *twenty apiece*. What is the difference between cardinals in *ginta* and in *genti*? (Those in *ginta* are so many *tens*; those in *genti* so many *hundreds*.) Between ordinals in *cesimus*, *gesimus*, and those in *centesimus*, *gentesimus*? (Those in *cesimus*, *gesimus*, are so many *tens*; those in *centesimus*, *gentesimus*, so many *hundreds*.) Do the distributives in *ceni*, *geni*, belong to *tens* or *hundreds*? (To *both*.) Is there any difference of form between them? (Yes: the *hundreds* are added to a root end-

what are *ille, iste*, strengthened? (By *ic* : *illic, illæc, illoc* ; *istic, istæc, istoc*.)

THE VERB.

Go through the terminations of the Latin verb (150). In what tenses do verbs of the third in *io* drop the *i* (165)? Go through *suscipio*—*suscipior* (165). Give the first person of each tense of *suscipio*, that has root of present. Go through *esse* (154). In what persons and tenses of *prosum* is *prod*, not *pro*, prefixed to the tenses of *esse* (177)?

Go through *possum* (177), *volo, nolo, malo* (178), *edo, fero* (178). Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive? (Of *facio*.) What peculiarities has it? (The perfect tenses are regular from *facio*; *factus sum*, &c.; the imperfect ones regular from *fio* of the *fourth*, with this exception, that *imperf. subj.* and *infin.* keep the *e* with *i* before it; *fierem, fieri*.) Go through *eo* (178). What is the compound of *eo* with *re*? (*Red-eo*.) Go through *ajo*.¹ What is *ain' tu*? (= *aisne tu*? *say you so*?) Go through *inquam*,² *I say*. What *tenses* and what *meaning* have

¹ Ajo.

Indicative.			1. Present.	Conjunctive.		
Ajo	Ais	Ait		Ajam	Ajas	Ajat
—	—	Ajunt.		—	—	Ajant.
2. Imperfect.						
Ajebam	-bas	-bat				
Ajebamus	-batis	-bant.				
Imper.: Ai.				Partic.: Ajens.		

² Inquam.

Indicative.			1. Present.	Conjunctive.		
Inquam	Inquis	Inquit		—	Inquias	Inquiat
Inquimus	Inquitis	Inquiunt.		—	Inquiatis	Inquiunt.
2. Imperfect.						
	Inquiebam	-bas	-bat			
	Inquiebamus	-batis	-bant.			
3. Future.						
—	Inquies	Inquiet	Imperat.: Inque, Inquito.			
—	—	Inquiunt.				
4. Perfect.						
—	Inquisti	—	Partic.: Inquiens.			
—	Inquistis	—				

- tion? (Yes: when the answer 'no' is confidently expected; and often with something of impatience.)
55. How is 'yes' to be translated? (Either by the particles *ita*, *ita est*, *sane*, *etiam*, *vero*; or by repeating the word about which the question is made.)
56. How is 'no' to be translated? (Either by *negative particles* (*non*, *minime*, *nihil minus*, &c.), with or without the verb of the interrogative sentence; or by *imo* with a *noun*, *adjective*, or *verb*, which is the *opposite* to the one in the interrogative sentence.)
- § 6. (*May*, *might*; *can*, *could*; *should*, *ought*.)
57. Go through *I may go*, &c.
(*mihi ire licet*, *I may go*.
tibi ire licet, *thou mayest go*, &c.)
58. *I might have gone*.
(*mihi ire licuit*, *I might have gone*.
tibi ire licuit, *thou mightest have gone*, &c.)
59. *I can do it*.
(*ego facere possum*, *I can do it*.
tu facere potes, *thou canst do it*, &c.)
60. *I could have done it*.
(*ego facere potui*, *I could have done it*.
tu facere potuisti, *thou couldst have done it*, &c.)
61. *I ought to do it*.
(*me facere oportet*, } *I ought to do it*;
or *ego facere debeo*, } or, *should do it*.)
62. *I ought to have done it*.
(*me facere oportuit*, } *I ought to have done it*;
or *ego facere debui*, } or, *should have done it*.)
63. Translate, *I ought to do it*, omitting *ut*.
(*ego faciam oportet*, *I ought to do it*.
tu facias oportet, *thou oughtest to do it*, &c.)
64. I MAY BE DECEIVED. (*Fieri potest ut fallar*.)
65. How is the *perf. infin.* to be translated after *might*, *could*, *ought*? (By *pres. infin.* unless it is meant that the action should have been completed before the time spoken of.)

- gen., but of the *other substantive*.) 78. In what case does a substantive of *description* stand when it *has an adjective agreeing with it*? (In the genitive or ablative.¹) 79. By what cases are *opus est* followed? (By an *ablative of what is needed*, a *dative of the person who needs*.²) 80. What other construction is there with *opus est*?³ (*Opus* is often used in the *nom.* or *acc.* after *esse*.) 81. THERE IS NO NEED. WHAT NEED IS THERE? (*Nihil opus est. Quid opus est?*) 82. THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN. THE MIDDLE OF THE WAY. THE REST OF THE WORK. THE WHOLE OF GREECE. (*Summus mons; media via; reliquum opus; universa Græcia.*)
83. What adjectives govern the genitive? (Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*, with many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*.⁴) 84. What case do participles *used adjectively* and verbals in *az* govern? (The genitive.⁵)
85. What substantives are omitted after *to be*? (Such substantives as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.*⁶) 86. IT IS CICERO'S PART. (*Ciceronis est.*) IT IS YOUR PART. (*Tuum est.*)⁷ 87. What case do verbs of *accusing, &c.* take of the *charge*? (Genitive.⁸) 88. What case do *satago, &c.* govern? (Genitive.⁹) 89. What case do verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* govern? (Acc.

¹ *Laus, vituperium, vel qualitas rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo.*

² *Opus et usus ablativum exigunt.*

³ *Opus autem adjective, pro necessarius, quandoque poni videtur.*

⁴ *Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem, significant, atque his contraria, genitivum exigunt: cum plurimis aliis quæ affectionem animi denotant.*

⁵ *Participia, cum sunt nomina, genitivum exigunt.*

Adjectiva verballia in az etiam genitivum exigunt.

⁶ *Sum genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet.*

a. This genitive may be rendered in various ways, (besides 'it is the duty,' or 'part of:' 'a mark of:') 'it is characteristic of;' 'it is incumbent on;' 'it requires;' 'it demands;' 'it shows;' 'it betrays;' 'it is for, (you, &c.;)' &c.

Non cujusvis est, it is not every man who can, &c.

⁷ *Excipiuntur hi nominativi, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, belluinum, et similia.*

⁸ *Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, qui crimen significat.*

(*Eng.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat.*) To condemn of the head, (capitis.)

⁹ *Satago, misereor, et miseresco, genitivum postulant.*

- sometimes the *accus.*) 100. When should *similis* take the *gen.*? ('To express like a person in *character.*')
 101. In what case do you put the person *to, for, or against whom* the action is done, or the feeling entertained? (*Dat.*) 102. Mention the classes of verbs that take the *dat.* (Verbs that signify *advantage or disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*; of *giving and restoring*; of *promising and paying*; of *commanding and telling*; of *trusting and intrusting*; of *complying with and opposing*; of *threatening and being angry, &c.*¹) 103. Do any of these take the *acc.* also? (Yes: many govern the *acc.*; and many an *acc.* of the *immediate, a dat.* of the *remoter* object.) 104. By what prepositions may verbs of *comparing* be followed? (By the *prepositions, cum, ad, and inter se, 'together.'*) 105. What verbs of *advantage and disadvantage* govern the *acc.*? (*Juvo, lædo, delecto, and offendo, govern the acc.*²) 106. Of verbs of *commanding, which govern the acc. only, and which the dat. or acc.*? (*Rego and guberno govern the acc., tempero and moderor the acc. or dat.*³)
 107. What case do *sum* and its compounds govern? (*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum, governs the dative.*⁴)
 108. Mention the compound verbs that generally govern the *dat.* (Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene, satis, male.* Most of those compounded with
Præ, con, sub,
Ad, in, inter, ob.
 Many of those compounded with
Ab, ante, de, and e,
*Post, super, pro, and re.*⁵)

¹ Verba dandi et reddendi; promittendi ac solvendi; imperandi et nuntiandi; fidendi; obsequendi et repugnandi; minandi et irascendi; regunt dativum.

His jungas nubo, faveoque, indulgeo, parco,
 Gratulor, auxilior, studeo, medeorque, vacoque.*

☞ 'He threatens me with death,' should be
 In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'

² Ex his juvo, lædo, delecto, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt.

³ Excipe rego, guberno, quæ accusativum habent; tempero et moderor, quæ nunc dativum. nunc accusativum habent.

⁴ Sum cum compositis, præter possum, regit dativum.

⁵ Dativum ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, bene, satis, male; et cum his prepositionibus, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter.

* In the sense of 'to have leisure for;' 'to be engaged in.'

§ 16. *Place.*

154. In what case is the town *at which* a thing is done, to be put? (In the *gen.* if it is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension: if not, in the *ablative*.)
 155. In what case is the name of a town to be put in answer to *whither*? (*Acc.*²) 156. In answer to *whence*? (*Abl.*³) 157. To *what* proper names do these rules apply? (To the names of *towns* or *small islands*.) 158. In what case do *urbs* and *oppidum* stand in apposition to the name of a town in the *gen.*? (In the *ablative*.) 159. How is *at* translated before the name of a town, when the action was not done *in*, but *near* it? (By *ad* or *apud*.) 160. How is *local* space expressed? (By the *acc.*, sometimes by the *abl.*)
- 160.* AT HOME. FROM HOME. HOME, after a verb of motion. INTO THE COUNTRY. FROM THE COUNTRY. IN THE COUNTRY. ON THE GROUND. IN THE FIELD. (*At home*, domi. *From home*, domo. *Home*, domum. *On the ground*, humi, *which may follow a verb of either rest or motion*. *In the field*, militiæ. *Into the country*, rus. *From the country*, rure. *In the country*, ruri; or less commonly, rure.)

§ 17. *Gerunds.*

161. Decline '*grieving*' throughout.⁴ 162. OF WRITING A LETTER. (Scribendi epistolam; or, scribendæ epistolæ.) 163. THE LETTER IS TO BE WRITTEN; or, THE LETTER MUST BE WRITTEN; or, WE MUST WRITE THE LETTER, (scribenda est epistola, *the letter is to be written*.) 164. Go through, I MUST WRITE.

¹ Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit.

Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur.

² Verbis significantibus motum ad locum fere additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione.

³ Verbis significantibus motum a loco fere additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione.

⁴ N. Dolere, *grieving*.

G. dolendi, *of grieving*.

D. dolendo, *to grieving*.

Acc. dolere, *grieving*, (ad dolendum, *to grieve*.)

Abl. dolendo, *by grieving*.

The *acc.* is *dolendum* only, when governed by a preposition.

(Generally by the *present subjunctive* : but sometimes by the *imperfect*.)

210. When the consequent verb has a '*would*' or '*should*,' but the conditional verb not, how is the translation to be made ? (By the subjunct. *imperf.* or *pluperfect*.)
- (214.) { Si quid habet, dat.
 { Si quid habebit, dabit.
 { Si quid habeat, dabit.
- (215.) { Si quid habeat, det.
 { Si quid haberet, daret.
- (216.) { Si quid haberet, daret.
 { Si quid habuisset, dedisset.
217. With what tenses may *si* take the indic. ? (With *pres.*, *perf.*, and *fut.*) 218. With what tenses does *si* always govern the subjunctive ? (With the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*.)
219. What are the conditional forms of the *subj.* ? (*Scriberem, scripsissem, and scripturus essem* : but *scribam* is often used conditionally.) 220. When should *scripturus essem, eram* or *fui*, be used for '*should have written* ?' (When the thing *would probably have happened*, because it was so *intended* or *arranged*.) 221. What tenses of the *indic.* are used for the *subj.* in conditional sentences ? (The *imperfect* and *pluperfect*.) 222. Is *si* ever omitted ? (Yes.) 223. Where should the verb of the sentence then stand ? (First.)
224. In a dependent conditional sentence, the verb of the consequent clause will be in the *infin.* : what infinitives will take the place respectively of *dat* ? of *dabit* ? *daret* ? *dedisset* ? *daturus esset* ? (Dat will become *dare*. *dabit*, *det*, and *daret*, *daturum esse* : *dedisset*, *daturum fuisse* : *daturus esset*, *erat*, or *fuit*, *daturum fore*.)

§ 23. Oblique Narration.

225. Explain the meaning of *oblique narration*. (When the *speech of another* is reported in the *third person*.) 226. In oblique narration, in what mood will the principal verbs stand ? (The *infinitive*.) 227. In what mood will the verbs of the *subordinate clauses* stand, provided

! Of course, '*would have*,' '*should have*,' by the *pluperf.*

§ 25. *Quum and other Conjunctions.*

240. When does *quum* take the *indic.*? (When it expresses the *time*, either *simply* or in a *very marked manner*; and in such sentences as ‘*when you say this, you are mistaken.*’”) 241. What mood does *quum*, ‘*when*,’ govern with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*: and generally when the sentence with *when* can be turned into a *participle*? (The *subj.*) 241.* Mention some conjunctions that always govern the subjunctive. (Quasi, *tanquam*, *as if*; *utinam*, *would that*; *dum*, *modo*, *or dummodo*, *provided only*; *forsitan*, *perhaps*; *licet*, *although*.) 242. When are the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* used with *utinam*? (When the thing wished is not to be *represented as impossible to be realized*. The *imperf.* and *pluperf.* express wishes that *are*, in the speaker’s opinion, *impossible*, or *unlikely to be realized*.) 243. How is ‘*not*’ generally expressed after *utinam*, *dum*, &c.? (By *nē*.) 244. When the principal verb is in the present tense, in what mood is the verb after *antequam* or *priusquam* expressed? (In the *pres. indicative* or *subjunctive*.) 245. When the principal verb is in the *fut.*, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *future perfect* or the *present subjunctive*; sometimes in the *present indicative*.) 246. When the principal verb is in the *past* tense, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *perfect indicative*, or in the *imperfect subjunctive*.) 247. When should the *subj.* always be used after *antequam*, *priusquam*? (Whenever it is stated or implied to be *necessary*, *proper*, or *designed with a view to some purpose*, that the one action or event should precede the other.) 248. When do *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, = *until*, take the in-

¹ In such sentences what is said in the principal clause is not only *contemporaneous* with the action expressed in the *quum* clause, but is actually *included* in it.

When does *quum* always take the subjunctive? [When it means *although*, *whereas*, *since*, (when *since* does not express *time*.)]

22. 'For' and 'as' are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
23. When *one, two, &c.*, mean *one, two, &c. apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive numerals, singuli, bini, &c.* See C. 38.
24. To express the *future subjunctive passive*, we must not use the *participle in dus* with *sim, essem, &c.*, but *futurum sit, esset, &c.*, followed by *ut*.
25. After an expression of time, '*that*' is often used for *on which*.
26. What is *in form the present participle active* is often '*the participial substantive*' or gerund. It is always so, when it *governs* or is *governed*, instead of merely *agreeing*.
27. '*I have to do it*' must be translated by the part. in *dus*.
(Eng.) With whom *we have to live*.
(Lat.) With whom *it is to-be-lived*, (quibuscum vivendum est.)
28. '*It is,*' followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness, or something intended*.
29. But '*is to be*' sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness, or intention*, but *possibility* as, '*the passage is to be found in the fifth book,*' = the passage *may or can be found in the fifth book*.
30. A *present participle* must be translated by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf. or pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
31. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
32. '*But*' (= *except, unless*) after a negative is *nisi*, (or if it stands before a substantive) the prepos. *prater*.
33. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, '*at*' must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
34. '*One*' often means '*some one*' (*aliquis*) or '*a certain one,*' (*quidam*.)
35. '*Will*' and '*would,*' '*will not*' and '*would not,*' are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.
They are to be so translated when for
will, would, we may substitute
is (are, &c.) *willing, was* (were, &c.) *willing*.
36. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case: and then by what preposition, or what case.
37. O never translate, *puer admodum care,*
'*I am going to plough,*' by '*sum iens arare.*'
With *eo* the phrase has got nothing to do:
Be *sum araturus* the Latin for you.
38. In so many *apiece*, leave '*apiece*' quite alone,
But of numerals choose a *distributive one*.

VIII. DISTINCTION OF SYNONYMES.

- Qui *quærit*, REPERIT: non *quæsita* INVENIUNTUR.
- Tu SUCCENDE rogam; tædas ACCENDE facesque.
- Navis, equus, currusque VEHUNT; PORTABIT asellus
Pondera, PORTABUNTQUE humeri; leviora FERUNTUR.
Læva GERIT clipeum; vestesque GERUNTUR et arma.
- CONTINGIT use of things we like;
But ACCIDIT, when evils strike.
- Vilia DESPICIMUS: CONTEMNE pericula, miles:
SPERNE voluptates, fœdasque libidinis escas.
DESPICERE relates to what we *might value or respect*: CONTEMNERE to what we *might fear or think important*: SPERNERE, to what we *might accept or pursue*.
- EXIMO quæ mala sunt; ADIMO bona: DEMERE possum
Quidlibet: hæc teneas justo discrimine verba.
- Pars ORÆ est LITUS: retinentur flumina RIPIS.
Hence ORA, *coast*; LITUS, *shore*; RIPA, *bank*.

dum, ¹ donec, } <i>until; as long as, (dum,</i>	itaque, and so; therefore.
quoad, } <i>whilst.)</i>	igitur,
quam diu, as long as.	propterea, } <i>therefore</i>
si, ² if.	idcirco,
sin, but if: sin minus, but if not.	ergo,
nisi, ni, unless.	ideo,
etsi,	hinc, hence; therefore
tametsi, } <i>although; even though.</i>	quare,
etiāsi,	quapropter,
et, que, ac, atque, and, (ac seldom before	quamobrem, } <i>wherefore.</i>
k sounds.)	quocirca,
etiā, (before its	et—et,
word,) } <i>even; also; too.</i>	atque—atque,
quōque, (after its	ac—ac,
word,) } <i>(etiā, in answers,</i>	tam—quam, } <i>both—and;</i>
et,	tum—tum, } <i>not only—but also.</i>
aut, vel, ve, or.	quum—tum,
verum, vero, but.	non solum, { verum (or) } <i>not only, but</i>
autem, at, ast, atqui, sed, but.	non modo, { sed) etiā } <i>also</i>
tamen, atq̄amen, } <i>yet; notwithstanding;</i>	aut—aut, } <i>either—or.</i>
veruntamen, } <i>nevertheless.</i>	vel—vel, }
quia, because.	sive—sive, } <i>be it that—or be it that;</i>
quippe, because; inasmuch as	seu—seu, } <i>either—or: whether—or.</i>
quoniam, } <i>since.</i>	nunc—nunc, } <i>now—now; one while—</i>
quandoquidem, } <i>since.</i>	modo—modo, } <i>another.</i>
quando, when, since.	nec—nec, }
siquidem, since; if indeed.	neque—neque, } <i>neither—nor.</i>
quātēnus, in as far as.	nec, alone, may often be rendered by
nam, namque, } <i>for.</i>	'and' and 'not' carried to the verb.
enim, et̄nim, }	

Obs. *Enim, autem, vero, quidem, quoque, cannot stand as the first words of a sentence or clause: igitur seldom does.*

¹ *Dum, donec, quoad, in the sense of until, take the subj. when there is reference to an object to be obtained. In the sense of 'as long as' they have the indicative.*

² *Si and its compounds take the subjunctive of the imperfect and pluperfect, and of the other tenses when the condition is to be expressed doubtfully.*

LATIN INDEX.

f. refers to the page. Numerals below 7 refer to the Exercises, Part II. Above 6, to the Vocabularies, Part II. Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the Exercises, Part II.]

- A, ab, abs, *from; by*: a fronte, (24,) *in front*: ab u. c. *stands for* ab urbe condita, *from the city built; from the building of the city*
 abesse, *to be absent; to be far from*.
 abire, *to go away*.¹
 abolere, *to abrogate*.
 abolescere, *pass away, decay*.
 abripere, (ripn, rept,) 28, *to snatch away; hurry away*.
 abscondere, (did, dit,) *to hide*.
 absens, (23,) *absent*: construe 'in his absence'.
 absolvere, (solv. solūt,) *to acquit*, 12.
 abstinere, *to abstain from*, 25.
 absumere, *to take away, destroy*.
 ac, *and*.
 accedere, (cess,) *go up to; approach*.
 accidere, Syn. 4, *to happen; befall*: accidit, 21, *it happens; or, it happened*.
 accipere, (cēp, cept,) *to receive*, 2, 39.
 accipiter, *a hawk*, 2.
 accommodare se, *to adapt*.
 accurate, *accurately*, 40.
 accurrere, *to run up*.
 accusare, *to accuse*.
 acer, p. 139, *sharp, active, fierce*.
 acerbe, *sharply*, 20.
 acerbitas, *sharpness*, 15.
 acerbus, 36, *sour; bitter*.
 Achilles, (23,) *Achilles, the bravest of the Greeks who fought at Troy*: Gen. is.
 acies, *sharpness; sight; line or order of battle*: 'ranks': aciem instruere, 26, 29.
 acquirere, *to acquire*.
 acutere, *to sharpen*.
 aculeus, 13, *a sting, a thorn*.
 acumen, 19, *acuteness*.
 acute, *sharply; wittily*.
 ad, *to, at*; ad tempus, (25,) *for a time*; ad—usque, 19, *up to*.
 addere, *to add*.
 addictus morti, *condemned to death*, [addicere.]
 addiscere, 27, *to learn more*.
 adducere, 30, *to lead to; induce*.
 adeo, 21, (23,) *so; in such a manner*.
 adesse, (32,) *to be present, to be at hand*.
 adferre, (fero, irreg. verb,) *to bring*.
 adherere, *to adhere; to be joined to; to stick; or, be caught*.
 adhibere, 25, *to use, to employ*.
 ad-hinnire, *to neigh at any thing*.
 adhuc, 12, (22,) *hitherto, yet*.
 adimere, (ēm, empt,) *to take away something desirable*.
 adipisci, (adept,) *to obtain, gain, win*.
 adjuvare, *to help*, (acc.)
 administrare, 23, *to administer*.
 admirabilis, *admirable, wonderful*.
 admōdum, *very*.
 admonere, (monu, monit,) *to admonish, remind*.
 admōvere, *to move* (a thing) *to*.
 adnumerare, 31, *to reckon to*.
 adolescere, *to grow up; grow to maturity*
 adoriri, 37,² *to attack, fall on, accost*.
 adornare, (25,) *to adorn*.
 ad-scendere, 12, *climb to, ascend, mount*.
 ad-scribere, [to write in addition to.] ut se ad amicitium tertium adscriberent, (to admit him as a third person into their friendship;) to let him too be their friend.
 aspectus, (10,) *look, sight*: Gen. ūs.
 aspersere, (spers, spers,) *to besprinkle*.
 aspicere, 10, (spex, spect,) *to behold*.

¹ See Conj. of eo, inf. ire. Irreg. verbs, p. 123, *First Latin Book*.

² In Fab. 4. p. 256, *to address or accost*: meaning, however, that it was done with a deceitful intention.

deglubere, (glups, glupt,) to *slay*.
 deinceps, one after another; successively.
 deinde, 21, (ii,) thenceforth.
 de-icere, io, (jēc, ject,) to throw down.
 delectare, 5, to delight, allure.
 dēlēre, (dēlēv. dēlēt,) p. 169, to blot out, deface.
 delictum, 18, sin, transgression.
 deligere, (lēg, lect,) to choose out; to choose.
 delinquere, to transgress.
 delirare, 31, to rave, dote.
 delirus, crazy.
 Delphi, a town of Greece, famous for the Oracle of Apollo.
 delphinus, a dolphin.
 demens, enīus, mad.
 demissus, (part of demittere,) hung down; down.
 demittere, 20, to send down.
 demonstrare, to show, to prove.
 dēnārius, a denarius, (a Roman coin worth about 8½, or 15 cents.)
 denique, at last.
 dens, tooth; G. dentis.
 de-pellere, to drive away.
 dependere, to hang down.
 de-plorare, to bewail.
 deprehendere, to catch (in the commission of a fault, &c.)
 deridēre, 30, to deride, mock.
 descendere, 7, to come down.
 de-scribere, describe; lay out, (gardens.)
 de-scriptio, laying out, (of a garden, &c.)
 de-ſerere, (seru, sert,) 30, to leave off, forsake.
 de-ſiderare, to miss; to feel the want of.
 deſinere, (desin, deſitum,) to end; to leave off.
 deſipere, io, to be foolish, [de, from; ſapere, to be wise.] O me deſipientem! O fool that I was!
 deſperare, to despair of.
 de-ſpicere, to look down (upon.)
 deſtinare, to fix.
 deſtēgere, (tex, tect,) 13. (Voc. on perf. ſi.)
 deterrere, 35, to deter, frighten.
 de-trahere, (trax, tract,) to drag off; take off.
 de-tritus, (part. of deſterere, triv, trit,) rubbed, galled.
 Deus, God.
 devincere, (vic, vict,) to conquer completely; to conquer.
 devincire, (vinx, vinct,) to bind, enchain.
 devorare, to devour.
 dexter, (tra, trum,) right, (opp. to left.)
 Diāna, Diana, goddess of the chase.
 dicere, (dix, dict,) to say, to speak—to call.
 dictator, dictator, (a high office at Rome.)
 dictum, a saying.
 Dido, a Phœnician princess, queen of Carthage; Gen. ſs. See App. ii. p. 317.
 dies, day. Ad diem, to his day.
 difficilis, difficult.
 difficultas, difficulty

diffidēre, to distrust, (dat.)
 dignitas, worth, worthiness.
 dignus, worthy, abl.
 dilacerare, to tear to pieces.
 dilaniare, to tear to pieces.
 diligenter, diligently.
 diligentia, diligence.
 diligere, (dilex, dilect,) to love.
 diluvium, flood.
 di-mētor, (mensus,) to measure out.
 dimicare, to fight.
 dimittere, to send away; to dismiss.
 dirigere, (direx, direct,) to direct—to steer (a vessel.)
 discēdere, (discess,) to depart.
 discere, (didici,) to learn.
 disciplina, discipline, teaching
 discipulus, pupil.
 diſcrēpare, to be different.
 diſcrimen, difference, danger.
 diſjungere, (jux, junct,) to separate.
 diſpensator, a steward.
 diſplicere, (plicu,) to displease.
 diſponere, (pōu, pōſit,) to dispose; to place, arrange.
 diſputare, to discuss; to dispute.
 diſquirere, to examine.
 diſſerere, (seru, sert,) to discuss; to argue.
 diſſidium, disagreement, quarrel.
 diſſipare, to scatter; to spread abroad; publish.
 diſtinere, (distinu, distent,) to keep off; to engage or distract (with business.)
 diſtribuere, to distribute.
 diu, long; for a long time.
 diuturnus, long (of duration.)
 diſverſus, different: e diſverſo contendere, to maintain the contrary.
 dives, itis, rich.
 dividere (diviſ, diviſ,) to divide.
 divinitas, ſtis, divinity.
 divinus, divine.
 divitiæ, riches, wealth.
 divulgare, to publish.
 docēre, to teach.
 dolere, to be pained, grieve.
 dōlor, pain, sorrow.
 dōlus, trick, stratagem.
 dōmare, p. 169, ii., to tame.
 domesticus, domestic.
 dominatio, rule, sovereignty.
 dominus, master.
 dōmus, p. 136, house, home, G. ſs and i.
 dōnare, to present. See Synt. 275.
 donec, till, until—as long as.
 donum, gift.
 dormire, to sleep; to be asleep.
 drachma, drachma, (a Greek coin, worth about 9½, or 18 cents.)
 dubie, haud —, without doubt.
 dūcere, p. 162, to lead.
 ducere nomen, to take its name.
 ducere in matrimonium, to marry, (of the husband.)
 dudum, long ago.

expectare, to wait.
expirare, to expire.
exsare, to be extant.
exsul, (ūlis) an exile.
externus, external.
extimescere, to dread.
extra, without.
extrēmus, extreme,
extrinsecus, outwardly.

Faber, bri, a mechanic; smith, carpenter, &c.
fabula, tale, fable.
fabulōsus, 31, *fabulous*.
facere, to, p. 172, to do, to make, (imperat. fac.)
facessere, (ivi, itum), to make, to cause; to make off.
facies, ei, face.
facile, facilius, easily, more easily.
facilis, easy.
factum, deed, conduct, (in a particular case.)
facultas, capacity, power.
fallax, acis, 31, *deceitful*.
fallere, p. 172; fallit me animus = I deceive myself.
famēlicus, hungry, starved.
fames, is, hunger.
familiaris, intimate; (as subst.) a friend.
familiaritas, intimacy.
famulus, slave, servant.
fas, lawful (according to divine or natural law.)
fatēri, (fassus,) to confess.
fatigare, to fatigue.
faux, throat; fauces, (Ex. 44.) a pass, neck of land.
fāvere (dat.) to favor.
febris, (abl. l.), fever.
felicitas, atis, happiness.
felis, a cat.
felix, icis, happy, prosperous.
fera, wild beast.
fēre, almost.
ferire, to strike.
ferox, ōcis, fierce.
ferre, p. 178, to bear, carry.
ferrum, iron, sword.
fero, see ferre.
ferus, fierce.
fessus, weary, tired.
festus, festive.
fidelis, faithful, true.
fidere, fisis sum, to trust.
fides, fidelity, faith; fidem habere, to believe; G. el.
feri, p. 178, to be made or done.
figere, to fix.
figūra, figure.
filia, daughter; abl. pl. ābus.
filius, son; voc. fili.
filum, thread.
fingere, feign, fashion.
finire, to finish.

finis, end.
firmare, to strengthen.
firmitas, firmness, strength.
firmus, firm.
flagitare, to demand, call for.
flagitium, crime.
flamma, flame.
flectere, to bend.
flēre, p. to weep.
florēre, blossom, flourish.
florescere, come into flower; blossom; begin to flourish.
flos, flower. flōris
fluere, (flux,) to flow.
flumen, inis, river.
fluvius, river.
fŏcus, hearth.
fœdus, ōris, league, treaty.
fons, fontis, fountain.
fore, from esse.
fores, ium, door.
forma, beauty, form.
formica, ant.
formīdo, inis, fear.
fortasse, perhaps.
forte, by chance.
fortis, strong, brave.
fortiter, bravely.
fortuito casu, by accident.
fortuna, fortune; fortunæ, pl. property, possessions.
fortunatus, fortunate, prosperous.
forum, the forum; i. e. market-place, used also for the transaction of public business.
fossa, ditch, trench, foss.
fŏvĕre, (fŏv, fŏt.) to cherish.
frangere, (frēg, fract.) to break.
frater, G. tris, brother.
fraterculus, little-brother.
fratricida, a fratricide.
fraudare, to defraud.
frenum, curb, bridle.
frequentare, to frequent.
frētus, relying on.
fricare, to rub.
frigĕre, to be cold.
frigus, ōris, cold.
frons, frontis, a fronte, in front.
fructus, fruit, produce; G. ūs.
fructum capere ex, to derive advantage from.
frui, to enjoy.
frumenta, all kinds of corn.
frustra, in vain.
frustum, piece, morsel.
frutex, icis, shrub.
fugare, to put to flight; to rout.
fugere, (fugio,) fly, fly from.
fulcire, to prop.
fulgĕre, v. to shine, glitter.
fundus, i, estate, farm.
fungi, (functus,) to discharge, abl.
funis, (m.), rope.
furere, to rage, to be mad.

Im-mergere, (mers,) to plunge or thrust in.
Imminere, to hang over; to threaten.
 (dat.)

Immobilis, immoveable.

Immolare, to sacrifice.

Immortalis, immortal.

Immortalitas, immortality.

Imo, no — but.

Impar, āris, odd, (of number.)

Impēdire, to hinder.

Impellere, to impel; to drive on, (impul, impuls.)

Impendere, to spend.

Imperare, to command, (dat.)

Imperator, commander-in-chief; general.

Imperium, command, empire.

Impertire, to impart.

Impetrare, to prevail upon; to obtain (by entreaties.)

Impētus, assault, violence; G. ūs.

Impius, impious.

Implēus, (part. of implēre,) filled.

Impōnere, (impōsul, impositum,) to place-upon; to impose.

Imprimere, (unpress,) impress.

Imprimis, especially.

Imprōbus, bad.

Imprudens, ignorant, senseless.

Impugnare, 30.

Impūdēns, impudent.

In, (with abl.) in; (with acc.) into, to, against.

In tempore, in good time.

inānis, empty.

Incalescere, to grow warm.

Incendere, to set on fire, to burn.

Incendium, conflagration, fire.

Inceptum, (properly, a thing begun,) a purpose; a resolution.

Incertus, uncertain.

Incessere, (incessivi and incess) to fall upon.

Incidere, 24, to fall into, enter.

Incipere, (cēp, cept,) to begin.

Inceptum, undertaking.

Inclarescere, to become famous.

Incognitus, unknown.

Incōla, inhabitant.

Incolūmis, safe, uninjured.

Incommōdum, inconvenience, disadvantage, hardship.

Inconsiderantia, thoughtlessness.

Inconstantia, inconstancy.

Incredibilis, incredible.

Incultus, uncultivated, uncivilized.

Incurrere, to run into.

In-curs-io, (properly, a running against,) an attack.

Inde, thence, from this;—then.

Indignus, unworthy, (abl.)

Indoctus, unlearned.

Induere, to put on.

Indulgēre, to indulge.

Indus, the Indus.

Infelix, Icīs, unfortunate.

Inferre, (intūl, illāt,) to bear-against;

bellum inferre, to wage war against; to attack, invade.

Infestare, to make unsafe; to infest.

Infestus, hostile.

Inficere, (fēc, sect,) stain, dye.

Infirmus, infirm, weak.

Inflectere, 15, to bend in, crook.

Ingenium, abilities, mind.

Ingenii cultus, cultivation of the intellect; intellectual cultivation.

ingens, huge, immense; G. entis.

ingignere, (ingēnui, ingēnitum,) to implant.

Ingratus, ungrateful, disagreeable.

Ingruere, to burst out.

Inhibere, to restrain.

Inhonestus, dishonorable.

inimicus, enemy; as adj. hostile.

inimicissimus, most hostile.

Iniquus, unjust.

Injuria, injury, wrong.

Injuriā afficere, to wrong, to injure.

Injuste, unjustly.

Injustitia, injustice.

Innocens, innocent.

Innocentia, innocence.

Innotescere, (innotul,) to become known.

Innoxius, harmless.

Inōpia, want, poverty, destitution.

Inscitia, ignorance.

Insectari, to persecute, to rail at.

Insequi, to pursue, to follow.

Inservire, to be the slave of.

Inservire temporibus, to comply with the times; to accommodate oneself to the times.

Insidiae, plot, stratagem.

Insidiari, plot against.

Insignis, distinguished.

Insistere, to stand upon; to take a road or course.

Inspirare, to breathe into.

Instare, to press on; to press; to be at hand.

Instituere, to establish; to appoint; to train on: vitam instituere, to conduct yourself.

Instruere aciem, to draw up an army in order of battle.

Insula, island.

Insūper, besides.

Intēger, whole, entire, upright.

Integritas, uprightness, integrity.

Intellectus, intellect; G. ūs.

Intelligere, to understand; to be aware

Intemperantia, intemperance.

Intendere, (tend, tens,) to put forth.

Inter, between, amongst.

Interdū, in the day-time.

Interdum, sometimes.

Interea, in the mean time.

Interesse, to be engaged in.

Interest, there is a difference; it is of importance; it concerns, signifies, &c.

Interficere, io, (fēc, sect,) to kill.

Interimere, (ēm, empt,) to kill, to carry off.

Interrogare, to ask.

Interrogatio, a question.

liberare, *to free*.
 libere, *freely, spiritedly*.
 liberi, *children*.
 libertas, *liberty*.
 libido, inis, *lust, desire*.
 licentia, *permission; the power*.
 licet. (See page 296, Questions 57, 58.)
it is allowed.
 ligneus, *wooden*.
 lignum, *wood*.
 ligo, ōnis, *spade*.
 linnen, (inis,) *threshold*.
 linere, (lēvi, litum,) *to smear*.
 lingua, *tongue*.
 literæ, *a letter, literature*.
 litus, ōris, *shore*.
 locare, *to let on hire*.
 locuples, ētis, *rich*.
 locus, *a place*.
 longe, *far*.
 loqui, (locutus,) *to speak*.
 lubet or libet, *it pleases: to be rendered*
by I (you, &c.) like, please.
 lubido, inis, *lust, pleasure*.
 lucrum, *gain*.
 luctus, ūs, *sorrow*.
 ludere, *to play*.
 luna, *moon*.
 lupus, *wolf*.
 luscina, *nightingale*.
 lusus, ūs, *game*.
 lutulentus, is, *miry, dirty, muddy*.
 lux, lucis, *light*.
 luxuria, *luxury*.
 lyra, *lyre*.

Macedo, ōnis, *Macedonian*.
 machina, *machine*.
 macies, *leanness: macie confectus,*
(wasted away with leanness,) miserably
thin.
 magis, *more*.
 magister, tri, *master*.
 magistratus, ūs, *magistracy, magistrate*.
 magistratum gerere, *to hold a magistra-*
cy; to fill a high office.
 magnopere, *earnestly*.
 magnus, *great*.
 maior, *greater*.
 maiores, *our forefathers*.
 maledictum, *railing, abuse, scurrilous*
language.
 maleficium, *misdeed*.
 malum, evil. mala, *evils, ills*.
 malus, bad.
 malus, i. f., *an apple*.
 malus, i. m., *a mast*.
 mancipium, *slave*.
 manere, *to remain*.
 manifestus, *manifest*.
 manus, ūs, *hand, (f.)*.
 Marathon, *the field of a cele-*
brated battle between the Athenians and
Persians.
 mare, is, *the sea*.

Marianus, *Marian; of Marius*.
 marina, *salt (water.)*
 maritimus, *maritime; living in the sea*.
 martus, i, *husband*.
 Marsi, *the Marsians, a people of middle*
Italy.
 Massilia, *Marseilles*.
 mater, *mother; G. matris*.
 materies, *materials; wood, timber*.
 maturare, *to ripen; to hasten*.
 matre, *quickly; prematurely*.
 maturescere, *to ripen, (intrans.)*
 maturus, *ripe*.
 maxime, (adv.) *most, the most*.
 maximus, *at a very great price, very high-*
ly, the greatest.
 maximus, *the greatest*.
 Mediolanum, *Milan*.
 mederi, *to heal, (dat.)*
 mediocritas, *a middle point, the mean*.
 medius, *the middle, amidst*.
 medicus, *physician*.
 Megara, ōruin, *a town not very far from*
Athens.
 mel, mellis, *honey*.
 membrum, *member, limb*.
 memorabilis, *deserving to be remembered;*
memorable.
 memoria, *memory*.
 mendacium, *a lie*.
 mendax, acis, *lying (person;) liar*.
 mens, ntis, *mind*.
 mensa, *table*.
 mensis, is, m. *month*.
 mentiri, *to lie, to deceive*.
 merces, edis, *pay, reward*.
 merere, merui, quid mereri, (depon.,) *to*
deserve.
 merdies, mid-day, (m.)
 meritum, *desert*.
 metallum, *metal, mine*.
 mētere, (messu, mess,) *to mow; to reap;*
to pluck off.
 mētri, (mensus,) *to measure*.
 metuere, *to fear*.
 metus, ūs, *fear*.
 meus, a, um, *mine. Voc. masc. m.*
 mi, Voc. masc. of meus.
 micare, *to glitter, glisten*.
 migrare, *to remove, (intrans.)*
 miles, itis, *a soldier*.
 militia, *warfare*.
 millia, *thousands*.
 Miltiades, is, *the Athenian general to*
whom the victory of Marathon was due.
 minari, *to threaten*.
 minister, tri, 5, *a servant, attendant*.
 minor, less;—*the younger, (for minor*
natu.)
 mirabilis, } *wonderful*.
 mirus, }
 mirari, *to wonder, express admiration*.
 miscere, *to mingle, mix*.
 miser, ēra, ēram, *miserable, wretched*.
 miserandus, *to be pitted: miserandum in*
modum, in a horrible manner.

nōvus, *new*.
 nox, noctis, *night*.
 nubere, *to marry, (dat.)*
 nubes, *is, cloud*.
 nūdus, *naked*.
 nullus, G. Ius, *no, none: nullo modo, by no means*
 num, p. 295, 46, *whether*.
 num—an. See p. 295, 51, 52, &c.
 numerare, *to number, to reckon*.
 numerus, *number*.
 nunc, *now*.
 nuncupare, *to name; to mention a name*.
 nunquam, *never*.
 nuntiare, *to announce*.
 nuntius, *message, messenger*.
 nuptum dare, *to give in marriage: nuptum, supine of nubo*.
 nutrimentum, *nourishment*.
 nutrire, *to nourish; to support*.

Ob, *on account of*.
 ob oculos, *before our eyes*.
 obdormiscere, *to be falling asleep*.
 obducere, *to overlay, cover*.
 obēdire, *to obey, (dat.)*
 oberrare, *to wander about*.
 obesse, *to be prejudicial to, (dat.)*
 ob-jicere, *to, to throw against; to expose, (to.)*
 oblectare, *to delight*.
 oblinēre, (oblēv, oblīt,) *to bedaub*.
 oblitio, ōnis, *oblivion, forgetfulness*.
 oblivisci, (oblitus,) *to forget, (gen.)*
 obscurare, *to obscure, to darken*.
 obsequium, *obedience*.
 observare, *to observe; to keep*.
 obsidēre, (obsēd, obsess,) *to besiege*.
 obistere, *to withstand, prevent*.
 obstare, *to stand in the way; to prevent, (dat.)*
 obtegere, (obtex, obtect,) *to cover*.
 obtemperare, *to obey, (dat.)*
 obtinēre, (obtinui, obtinent,) *to obtain*.
 obviam, *adv. in the direction towards another person; obviam mittere, to send to meet, (dat. of person to be met.)* Obviam occurrere alicui, *to meet him accidentally*.
 occasio, ōnis, *opportunity*.
 occidens, *setting: (as subst.,) the west*.
 occidere, (occīd, occās,) p. 267, *to fall, to perish*.
 occidere, (occīd, occīs,) p. 267, *to kill, to slay*.
 occultare, *to hide*.
 occumbere, (occūbui,) *to fall (in battle.)*
 occupare, *to occupy*.
 occurrere, (occurr, occurs,) *to meet, (dat.)*
 oceānus, *the ocean*.
 octo, *eight*.
 ōculus, *eye*.
 ōdium, *hatred*.
 odor, ōris, *smell, odor*.
 odoratus, ūs, *smell, scent*.

offendere, (offend, offens,) *to offend; to light upon*.
 offero, *to offer*.
 officium, *duty*.
 officium præstare, *to perform a service*.
 ōleum, *oil*.
 olfācere, (olfēc, olfact,) *to smell, (trans.)*
 olor, ōris, *a swan*.
 elōrinus, *of the swan, (adj.)*
 ōmittere, (omīs, omīss,) *to omit, neglect*.
 omnis, *all, every: omnia, all things, every thing*.
 ōnus, ōris, *burden*.
 onustus, *laden, burdened*.
 opācus, *shady*.
 operam dare, *to go about (business.)*
 opērire, *to cover*.
 operōsus, *busy*.
 opes, um, *means, resources, wealth*.
 opinari, *to think, to imagine*.
 opperiri, *to wait for*.
 oppetere, *to encounter*.
 oppidanus, *inhabitant of a town*.
 oppressor, *oppressor*.
 opprimere, (oppress, oppress,) *to oppress; to fall upon; to crush*.
 oppugnare, *to attack, assault*.
 ops, ōpis, f., *power, assistance*.
 optimus, (superl. of bōnus, good,) *the best*.
 opus, ōris, *work*.
 opus est, *there is need*. [Render *nom as dat.; est by 'have;'* abl. by *'of;'* "mihi I est have opus need cibo of food."]
 opus facere, *to work; to labor*.
 orāculum, *oracle*.
 ōrare, *to pray*.
 orare causam, *to plead a cause*.
 oratio, ōnis, *speech, oration*.
 orator, *an orator*.
 oratōrius, *oratorical*.
 orbis, is, m., *orb; the world*.
 orbis terrarum, (the orb of the lands, =) *the world*.
 ordinare, *to arrange*.
 ordo, inis, (m.,) *order*.
 oriens, *rising; part. from orior: (as subst.,) the east*.
 origo, inis, *origin*.
 oriri, (orēris, oritur, &c.; perf. ortus sum,) *arise*.
 ornare, *to adorn*.
 ornatus, ūs, *ornament, decoration*.
 os, oris, n., *face*.
 os, ossis, n., *a bone*.
 ostendere, (tend, tens,) *to show*.
 Ostia, *a town in Italy, at the mouth of the Tiber*.
 ostia, pl., *mouth (of a river.)*
 ostium, *door*.
 ōtiōsus, *full of leisure, disengaged, inactive, idle*.
 ovis, is, f., *sheep*.

plebs, the people, (as distinguished from the patricians or nobles, the plebeians; G. plēbis.

plēctere, to twist, twine, weave. punish.

plerique, plerique, plerique, the most.

plerumque, generally.

plorare, to cry; to weep aloud; to bewail.

plus, more, G. pluris.

Pæclle, the painted portico at Athens.

poëma, ætis, a poem. App. il.

pœnam dare, to suffer punishment.

pœnitentia, penitence, regret (for.)

pœnitet, it repents. Take acc. as nom.

me I, pœnitet repent.

Pœnus, a Carthaginian.

poëta, a poet.

polliceri, (pollicescus,) to promise.

pompæ, procession.

pomum, an apple, or other fruit.

pōnere, (pōsui, pōsit,) to place.

pōns, pontis, a bridge.

Pontifex Maximus, the Pontifex Maximus, or Chief Priest.

Pontus Euxinus, the Euxine, now the Black Sea.

pōpulari, to lay waste; to ravage.

popularis, popular.

pōpulus, i, f., a poplar tree.

pōpulus, i, a people, the people.

por-rigere, (rex, rect,) to extend, stretch out.

porta, gate.

portare, to carry.

porticus, ūs, portico.

portus, ūs, port, harbor.

posse, to be able, can.

possidēre, (possēd, possess,) to possess.

post, after, (acc.)

postea, afterwards.

posthac, hereafter, afterwards.

postpōnere, (pōsui, pōsit,) to put after.

pōstquam, after.

postulare, to demand.

pōtens, (potentis,) powerful.

potentia, power.

potestas, ætis, power.

pōtio, ōnis, drink.

potiri, (pōtior,) to get possession of.

pōtius, rather.

præ, before; in comparison with; for.

præbere, to afford; to supply: præbere se, to prove or show oneself.

præceptor, 7, teacher, preceptor.

præceptum, 7, precept.

præcipere, io, (præcēp, præcept,) 7, to direct, instruct.

præcipitare, to cast down headlong; to ruin.

præclarus, 30, illustrious.

præcurrere, to run before; to outrun, (dat.)

præda, booty, prey. prædæ esse, (to be for a prey.) to be the prey.

prædicare, to proclaim; to extol.

prædicere, (prædix, prædict,) to foretell.

præditus, endowed with.

præmittere, (mis, miss,) to send forward; to send on.

premium, reward.

præsens, tis, present.

præsidium, a defence; a garrison.

præstans, tis, excellent.

præstare, to be better; to excel, (dat. or acc. of person:—) to show, or exhibit.

præstat, it is better.

præterea, besides; more.

præter-ire, to pass (by.)

præteritus, past.

prætor, ōris, prætor, a Roman magistrate.

prætorius, relating to a prætor; prætorian; of prætorian rank.

prætūra, the prætorship.

prætum, meadow.

pravius, ætis, wickedness.

prævus, wicked, depraved.

præces, um, prayers.

præmere, (press, press,) to press.

prætiōsus, 25, precious.

primum, first, (adv.:) ut primum, as soon as.

primus, first.

princeps, first; (as subst.) prince, chief.

principatus, ūs, the first place.

prior, former.

priscus, ancient, old.

privare, to deprive, (abl.)

privatus, private.

pro, for; in proportion to, (abl.)

prōbare, to approve of.

prōbati, to be approved of.

prōcēdere, to go along.

prucella, storm.

prōcēritas, tallness, height.

prōcul, afar off; at a distance.

prōdere, (prodidi, prodit,) to betray.

prōdesse, (profui,) p. 177, to profit, do good to.

proditiō, ōnis, treachery.

proditor, a betrayer; a traitor.

prodūcere, (dux, duct,) to lead forth.

prælium, battle.

prælium committere, 15, li. to join battle.

prōfecto, in truth, assuredly.

prōfectus, set out, departed.

proficere, io, (fēc, fect,) to make progress

profigere, to rout.

prōhibere, 21, to prohibit, forbid.

prōles, is, f. offspring.

promiscuus, mixed.

promissum, promise.

promisso stare, to stand to a promise

to keep a promise.

prōmittere, (promis, promiss,) to promise

prope, near.

propensus, inclined.

propior, nearer.

propōnere, (proposui, proposit,) to place

before, 19; to draw; to offer.

propositum, purpose, intention.

proprius, peculiar to; (ones) own.

propter, on account of.

prorsus, 21, 31, thoroughly, altogether.

refert, it is of importance : nihil refert, it is of no importance ; makes no difference.

reficere, io, to refresh, refit.

refugere, io, to flee back.

refulgere, (refuls.), to shine.

regalis, royal.

régere, (rex, rect.), to rule, to govern

regina, queen.

régio, ònis, region, district, country.

regius, royal.

regnare, to reign.

regnum, kingdom.

rejicere, io, (rejêc, reject.) 30, to reject.

relinquere, (reliqu, relict,) to leave.

reliquia, remains.

reliquus, remaining ; but see p. 141, 78.

remanere, (remans.), to remain.

remedium, 29, remedy.

reminisci, to recollect, (gen. or acc.)

remissio, onis, a relaxation, lessening, diminution.

remittere, (remiſs, remiss.), to remit : pœnam remittere, to excuse a punishment.

renovare, to renew.

reor, to think.

repêre, (reper, rept.), to find. See Syn.

repêtere, (petiv, petiti.) to seek again.

reportare, to carry back : victoriam reportare, to gain a victory.

reprehendere, to blame, censure.

reprehensio, ònis, blame.

repudiare, to reject.

requirere, to seek again ; to require ; to miss.

rêrum natûra, nature.

res, rei, thing, affair.

res gestæ, achievements, deeds, (in war.) successes, &c.

resistere, to resist, (dat.)

resônare, (sonu, sonit.) to resound.

respondere, (respond, respons.) to answer.

respublica,

commonwealth.

restituere, 18.

reticere, (reticui,) to keep silence about.

retinere, (retinu, retent,) to hold back ; to retain.

retribuere, to give back ; to repay : gratiam retribuere, to recompense.

reus, an accused person.

reverti, (reversus,) to turn back ; return.

reviviscere, to revive.

rex, rēgis, king.

Rhēnus, the Rhine.

Rhōdānus, the Rhone.

ridere, to laugh, laugh at.

rigere, to be stiff, dried up

ripa, bank. Syn.

risus, ūs, laughter.

robustus, robust, strong.

rôgare, to ask.

rogatio, ònis, asking, proposal ; a bill proposed.

rôgus, funeral pile.

Rôma, Rome.

Romānus, Roman

ros, rôris, dew.

rosa, rose.

rotundus, round.

Rûbico, ònis, the Rubicon, a stream that formed the boundary between Italy and Gallia Cisalpina.

rudere, to Bray.

rudis, uneducated.

ruere, to rush, hurl down.

rugire, to roar.

rus, rûris, the country. See p. 304, (160*.)

rure, from the country.

ruri, in the country.

Sabine, d' Sabine woman.

sacer, cra, crum, (devoted to the gods,) hence (1) sacred, (2) accursed.

sacerdos, òtis, priest, priestess.

sacra, sacred rites or solemnities ; festivals.

sacramentum, 9, military oath, a pledge.

sacrum, a sacrifice.

sæpe, often.

sævire, to rage, to act cruelly.

sagitta, arrow.

Saguntini, the Saguntines.

Saguntum, Saguntum, a town.

Sâlamis, Inis, an island near the coast of Attica.

salio, to spring, leap.

salius, salt, saltish.

saltare, to dance, to leap.

salem, at any rate ; at all events ; at least.

saltus, ūs, a woodland pasture.

salûber, (salubris,) healthful.

salus, ūtis, safety, welfare.

salutare, to salute.

salvus, safe.

sanare, to cure.

sancire, to confirm.

sane, assuredly.

sanguis, Inis, blood.

sânus, sound ; in health.

sâpere, to taste, be wise.

sapiens, ntis, wise.

sarcina, burden, package.

Sardes, ium, Sardis.

satiare, to satisfy.

satis, enough ; satis magnus, pretty considerable.

satisfacere, (satisfec, satisfact,) to satisfy, (dat.)

Saturnus, i, Saturn.

saxum, rock, stone.

scelus, ūris, crime.

sceptrum, sceptre.

scientia, knowledge.

Scipio, ònis, Scipio, a celebrated Roman general.

scire, to know.

scôpus, a mark.

scribere, to write.

scriptor, oris, writer, author.

scriptum, thing written ; writing.

- vīgāre, p. 169. iv.
 vigilare, *to be awake; to watch.*
 villa, *farm-house, country-house.*
 vincere, (vic, vict,) p. 172.
 vincere, (vinx, vinct,) p. 174,
 vinculum, *chain.*
 vindicare, *to avenge.*
 vinea, *vineyard.*
 vinum, *wine.*
 violare, *to violate; to wrong.*
 vipēra, *viper.*
 vir, viri, *man, (opposed to woman;) husband.*
 virēre, p. 169, iv., *to be green, to flourish.*
 vires, ium, *strength. (See vis.)*
 virgo Vestalis, *a Vestal virgin, whose duty it was to keep up the sacred fire in the temple of Vesta.*
 virgultum, *bush.*
 virtus, ūtis, *manly excellence; virtue; courage.*
 vis, 2d sing. of volo.
 vis, vim, vi; pl. vires; *strength, power, force, multitude: summis viribus, with all his might.*
 visitare, p. 173, (v.) *to visit*
- visus, (See vidēre, p. 170, vil.,) *seen.*
 vitare, *to avoid.*
 vitis, is, *vine.*
 vitium, *fault, vice.*
 vituperare, *to reprove; to blame; to chide.*
 vivere, (vix, vict,) p. 173, (vi,) *to live.*
 vivus, *alive.*
 vix, *scarcely; with difficulty.*
 vocare, *to call; to invite.*
 volo, (velle, volui,) *to be willing, to wish.*
 volare, *to fly.*
 voluntas, ātis, *inclination, will.*
 voluptas, ātis, *pleasure.*
 vox, vōcis, *voice; also speech, exclamation.*
 vulnerare, *to wound.*
 vulnus, ūris, *wound.*
 vulpes, is, (f.) *fox.*
 vultus, ūs, *countenance, look.*
- Xēnōphon, ontis, *a Grecian general, an elegant writer and historian.*
 Xerxes, is, *Xerxes, a king of Persia.*

compel, *cōgere*, (*cōg.*, *coact.*)
 complete a work, *opus*, *conficere*, (*fēc.*, *fect.*) or *absolvere*, (*solo*, *solūt.*)
 comply with, *obēdire*, *dat.*
 conceal, *cēlare*, (2 acc.)
 condemn, *dānnare*.
 concerning, *dē*.
 concerns, (*it.*) *intērest*.
 conduct, (in a particular instance,) *factum*.
 confidence. See *betray*.
 congratulate, *gratulari*.
 conquer, *vincere*, (*vīc.*, *vīct.*;) *superare*:
 (= win by conquest.) *expugnare*, or
cāpere, (*cēp.*, *cept.*)
 conquered, *vīctus*.
 conqueror, *vīctor*, *ōris*.
 conscience, *conscientia*: a pure or
 clean conscience, *īntēgra conscientia*.
 consider, (= think,) *existimare*; *habere*.
 considerably, *aliquanto*, (before com-
 paratives.)
 consolation, *consolatio*, *ōnis*.
 conspiracy, 15, *conjuratio*.
 Constantinople, *Constantinopolis*, G. *is*,
 Acc. *im*.
 consul, *consul*, *ūlis*.
 consular power, *consularis potestas*.
 consulate, *consulatus*, *ūs*.
 consult, *consulere*, (*sulū*, *sult.*) acc.
 contend, *certare*.
 contented, *contentus*, *abl.*
 contest, 17, *certamen*.
 continue, *permanēre*, (*mans.*;) *persē-*
verare.
 conversation, *sermo*, *ōnis*.
 cool, *deservescere*.
 cool-down, *deservescere*, 18.
 cook, *cōquere*.
 Corinth, *Corinthus*.
 Corinthian, *Corinthius*.
 correct, *corrīgere*.
 corrupt, *corrumpere*, (*rūp.*, *rupt.*)
 cost, *stāre*, (*abl.* of price.)
 cough, *tussis*.
 counsel, *consilium*.
 count, *numērare*.
 country, (= land,) *terra*; (= district,)
rēgio, *ōnis*; (= native country,) *pa-*
tria; (as opposed to town,) *rus*,
rūris.
 country, in the, *ruri*.
 country, into, *rus*.
 country, from, *rure*.
 courageously, *fortiter*.
 court the favour, *amb-ire gratiam*.
 cover, *ob-tēgere*, (*lex*, *tect.*)
 crane, *grus*, *is*.
 crackle, *crēpare*, p. 168, li.
 create, *creare*.

create, (an office,) *instituere*, (*stitu-*,
stitut.)
 crop, *seges*, *ēlis*.
 crime, *malefīcium*; *scelus*, *ōris*; *flagi-*
tium.
 cross, *transjicere* or *trajicere*, (*jēc.*, *ject.*)
 acc.
 to cross the Alps, *Alpes superare*.
 crown, *corōna*.
 " *cingere*.
 cruel, *crudēlis*.
 crush, *opprimere*, (*press.*, *press.*)
 cry, *clamor*, *ōris*.
 cry out, *clamare*.
 cry, (weep,) *flēre*.
 cultivate, *cōlere*, (*cōlū*, *cult.*;) to cultivate
 our minds, *mentes excolere*.
 cure, *sānare*.
 Cures, G. *ium*.
 custom, *consuetūd-o*, *īnis*.
 customary, *usitatus*.
 custody, *custōdia*.
 cut-down, *cādere*, (*cēcid.*, *cas.*)

Daily, *quōtidie*.
 dance, *saltare*.
 danger, *pericūlum*.
 dangerous, *periculosus*.
 daughter, *filia*.
 day, *dies*, *ei*.
 day and night, *dies noctesque*.
 dead, *mortuus*.
 death, *mors*, *tis*.
 debt, debts, *as alienum*; *as*, *ōris*: *as*
alienum, properly 'another man's
 brass,' (i. e. money.)
 deceive, *decipere*, *cēp.*, *cept.*: (if without
 intending it,) *fallere*, *fēfelli*.¹
 decree, *decernere*, (*crev.*, *cret.*)
 deep, *altus*.
 defend, *defendere*, (*fend.*, *fens.*;)
 defend (a town) by a garrison, *præsi-*
dio firmare.
 defraud, *fraudare*, (*abl.*)
 delight, *juvare*.
 delightful, *jucundus*.
 deliver, *liberare*, *abl.*
 demand, *postulare*.
 deny, *nēgare*.
 depart, *discēdere*, *abl.*
 deprive, *privāre*, (*abl.*)
 derive, *haurire*.²
 descend, 7; descent, 7, *descendere*, *de-*
scensus.
 desert, *desētere*, (*sēru.*, *sort.*)
 deserter, 16, li., *transfūga*.
 deserve, *merēri*, (*merit.*;) well of, *bōne*
de.
 deserving of, *dignus*, *abl.*
 desire, (= eager pursuit,) *studium*.

¹ Ex. 20. 'How you deceived yourself!' *ut animus tuus te sefellit!*

² 'From' after 'haurire' is to be translated by *e* or *ex*.

lay-siege-to, *obsidēre*, (*obsēd obsess.*)
 lead, *dūcere*.
 lead a life, *āgere vitam*, (*ēg. act.:*) *dūgere vitam*.
 lead away, *abducere*.
 leader, *dux, dūcia*.
 leaf, *folium*.
 learn, *discere*, (*didic.:*) (of facts, events, &c.) *compērire*, (*compēri.:*) *cognoscere*, (*nov. nit.*)
 learn by heart, *ediscere*.
 learned, *doctus*.
 leave, *relinquere*, (*liq. lic.:*)
 leave, (= to go out of,) *excēdere*, *abl.* (*cess.*)
 leave a province, *discēdere ex provinciā*.
 left-hand, *sinistra*.
 legion, *legio, ūnis*.
 less, *minus*.
 lessen, (= soften,) *lenire*.
 lest, *ne*.
 letter, *littera*,¹ pl.: *epistōla*.
 liberty, *libertas, ūtis*.
 lie, *mentiri*.
 lie, *mendacium*.
 lie down, *cubare*.
 lieutenant-general, *légātus*.
 life, *vita*; (= lifetime,) *ætās, ātis*.
 light, *levis*.
 light, (= kindle,) *accendere*; *succendere*, (*cend. cens.*) *Syn. ii.*
 like, *similis*, *dat. similis*, (*superl.*)
 likeness, *n. effigies, et.*
 lion, *leo, onis*.
 listen to, *obedire*, (*dat.:*) *obtemperare*, (*dat.*)
 little, *parvus*.
 little-garden, 8, *hortulus*.
 live, *vivere*, (*vix, vict.*)
 load, *cumulare*.
 long, *longus*.
 long, *diu*.
 look at, *spectare*.
 lose, *āmittere*.
 lose an opportunity, *occasionem prætermittere*.
 lot, *sors, sortis*.
 love, *āmare, diligere*, 7.
 lowest, *infimus, imus*.
 lust, *libido, inis*.
 luxuriant-growth, *luxuria*.
 luxury, *luxuria*.
 lyre, *lyra*.

Macedonians, *Macēdōnes, um*.
 machine, *māchina*.
 magistracy, *magistratus, ūs*.
 magnanimous, *magnanimus*.
 make myself master of, *pōtiri*, (*potitus sum.*) *abl.*

make, *fācere, ūte, fact.:*) am made, *fā.*²
 man, *homo, vir*.
 manifest, *manifestus*.
 Manlius, *Manlius*.
 manners, (= morals, character,) *mōres, um. pl.*
 many, *multi*.
 march-up, *advolare*.
 mark, *scōpus*.
 marriage, *connubium*.
 marry, (of a female,) *nubere, dat.*
 Marseilles, *Massilia*.
 master, (who teaches,) *magister, ri*.
 master, (who owns,) *dōminus*.
 mean, *significare*; (= to convey an opinion,) *censere*.
 means, *mōdus, rātio*.
 means, (= remedial or preventive means,) *remedia, pl.*
 means-of-escape, *exitus, ūs*.
 meaning, *sententia*.
 meadow, *prātum*.
 measure, *mēliri, ior, mensus*.
 meet, *occurrere*, (*occurr, occurs,*) *dat.*
 melt, *liquecere*.
 mention, *nuncūpare*. See 10.
 Milo, *Milo, Mīlonis*.
 military-oath, *sacramentum*.
 milk, *lac, lactis*.
 mind, *animus*.
 mine, *meus*; *voc. mi*.
 mindful, *mēmori, gen.*
 miserable, *miser, ēra, &c.*
 misfortune, *calamitas*; *cāsus, ūs*
 miss, *ōmittere, prætermittere*.
 mistress, *magistra*.
 mix, p. 169, ii., *miscēre*.
 mixed, *promiscuus*.
 modest, *pudicus*.
 money, *pecuniā*.
 moneyed, *pecuniōsus*, 7.
 month, *mensis, m.*
 monument, *monumentum*.
 moon, *luna*.
 morals, *mōres, um*.
 more, *plus*, with *gen.:*³ even more, *etiam plura*.
 more, (*adv.*) *māgis*.
 morose, *morōsus*, 8.
 mortal, *mortālis*.
 most men, *plerique*.
 motion, *motus, ūs*.
 mother, *māt-er, ris*.
 mount, *ad-scēdere*, (*scend, scens.*) (See 12.)
 mountain, *mons, ntis, m.*
 move, *mōvēre*, (*mov, mōt.:*) move, *neut. mōvēri*.
 move with compassion, *commōvēre*, (*mōv, mōt.*)

¹ *Litteræ* may also be used for *letters*.

² Ex. 26, Part II.: 'to make friends of enemies,' *ex inimicis amicos facere*.

³ That is, if *quantity* is meant: if number, *plures, a, &c.*, in agreement. 'More gold,' *plus auri*; 'more roses,' *plures rosa*

thunder, to, *tōnare*, p. 169.
 thunderbolt, *fulmen*, *inis*.
 Tiber, *Tiberis*, *is*, acc. *im*.
 tiger, *tigris*, *idis*, *f*.
 till, *cōlere*, (*colu*, *cult*.)
 till, *donec*, (*subj*.)
 time, *tempus*, *tempōris*; in a short time,
breve tempore.
 time, at the right, *in tempore*.
 timid, *timidus*, *pavidus*.
 tired, am—of, *tædet me*, *gen*.
 to-bed, *cubitus*, (*sup. of cubere*.)
 to day, *hodie*.
 to death, (after condemn,) *capitis*.
 to the city, (after return,) *in urbem*.
 together, (after to compare,) *inter se*.
 too much, *nimius*, (*nimius somnus*, or
nimum somni.
 too late, *særo*.
 top of, *summus*.
 torch, *tæda*.
 torment, *cruciare*.
 totter, *lābare*.
 touch, *tangere*.
 towards, *erga*, *acc.*; in, *acc.*; *adversus*.
 town, *oppidum*.
 Trasimene lake, *lacus Trasimēnus*.
 treasure, *thesaurus*; *opes*, (*pl.*;) *G. opum*.
 treachery, *proditio*, *unis*.
 treat, *tractare*.
 treaty, *fœdus*, *eris*.
 tree, *arbor*, *oris*.
 tribunal, *tribūnal*.
 tribune, *tribūnus*.
 tribune of the people, *tribunus plebis*.
 trick, *dolus*.
 triumph, *triumphus*.
 Trojan;—in the Trojan war, *bello Troja-*
no.
 troops, *copie*, *militēs*.
 troublesome, *molestus*.
 Troy, *Troja*.
 true, *verus*.
 truly, *vere*.
 trust, (= believe, have confidence in),
credere, (*dat*.)
 truth, the, *verum*.
 turn out, *evadere*, (*vas*.)
 tussilago, *G. inis*.
 twice, *bis*.
 two apiece, *bini*.
 tyrant, *tyrannus*.

Umpire, *arbiter*, *tri*.
 unbecoming, it is, *dedecet*, *acc*.
 uncertain, *incertus*.
 uncover, *aperire*, *detegere*.
 understand, *intelligere*, (*lex*, *lect*.)
 undertake, *suscipere*, (*cōp*, *cept*.)
 undertaking, *inceptum*, *8*.
 undertaking, an, *8*, *inceptum*.
 unfeeling, *durus*.
 unfortunate, *miser*, (*era*, *erum*.)
 unheard, *inauditus*.
 unjustly, *injusto*.

unlearned, *indoctus*.
 unless, *nisi*.
 unlike, *dissimilis*, *dat*.
 unmindful, *immemor*, *gen*.
 unnecessary, *superfluous*.
 unprofitable, *inutilis*.
 unskilled in, *imperitus*, *gen*.
 unwilling, *invitus*.
 unwilling, to be, *nolle*.
 unworthy, *indignus*, *abl*.
 upper, *summus*.
 upright, *honestus*.
 use, *uti*, (*usus*), *abl*.
 useful, *utilis*.
 useless, *inutilis*.
 usual, *suetus*.

Valley, *vallis*
 valuable, *pretiosus*.
 value, (= value highly,) *magni aestima-*
re, (not *aestimare* only;) of persons, *di-*
ligere.
 vanity, *vanitas*, *atis*.
 vapor, *vapor*, *oris*.
 various, *varius*.
 vary, *variare*.
 vast, *ingens*, *ntis*.
 verse, *versus*, *us*.
 very-confined, *per-angustus*.
 vessel, *navis*, *is*.
 vice, *vitiūm*.
 victim, *victima*.
 victory, *victoria*.
 vie, *certare*.
 vile, *turpis*.
 violence, *vis*, (— *vim*, *vi*;) *pl. vires*.
 violent, *vehemens*, *ntis*.
 violently-carry-off, *eripere*, (*eripui*, *erip-*
tus.)
 virtue, *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.
 virtuous, *honestus*.
 voice, *vox*, *vocis*.

Wage, *gerere*, (*gress*, *gest*.)
 wait, *manēre*, *expectare*.
 wait for, *opperiri*.
 walk, *ambulare*.
 wall, *murus*; (of a walled city,) *mania*,
pl.; (of a house,) *paries*, *etis*; (of a
 garden, &c.,) *maceria*: on the walls,
per muros.
 want, *carēre*, (*abl*.)
 want, *inopia*.
 war, *bellum*.
 ward off, *arcēre*.
 warm, *tēpere*.
 warm, *calidus*.
 warn, *mōnere*.
 warrior, *mīl-es*, *itis*.
 wasp, *vespa*.
 watch-over, *custōdīre*.
 water, *aqua*.
 wave, *fluctus*.
 way, *via*.

waylay, to, *insidias struere*, (*strux*,
struct.) with dat. of person.
 weak, *imbecillus*.
 wealth, *opes, opum*.
 weary, am, *tædet me*, gen.
 weather, *tempestas*.
 weight, *onus, eris*.
 well, *bene*; (= rightly,) *recte*.
 well-known, it is, *constat*.
 what? (interrog.) *quis, quæ, quid*, (but
 if it agrees with a subst., *quod*.)
 what, (meaning how great,) *quantus*.
 whatever, *quicquid*, neut. as subst.; *qui-*
cunque. adj.
 when, *quum, quando*, (*quum* not in de-
 pendent sentences.)
 whence, *unde*.
 where, *ubi*.
 which, (of two,) *uter*.
 white, *albus*.
 whither, *quo*.
 who? *quis?*
 whole, *totus*.
 wholesome, *saluber*.
 why, *cur*.
 wickedness, *nequitia*; wicked, *mâlus*,
imprôbus.
 wife, *mulier, eris*.
 wild, (of cries, &c.,) *atrox, ücis*.
 wild-beast, *fera*, (*bestia* understood.)
 will, *voluntas, âtis*.
 willing, to be, *velle*.
 willingly, *libenter*.
 win-by-arms, *ex-pugnare*, 8.
 win, (a country by arms,) *expugnare*.
 wine, *vinum*.
 winter, *hiems, hiemis*.
 wisdom, *sapientia*.

wise, *sapiens, tis*.
 wish, (= choose, have a mind,) *velle*
 wish, *cupere*,
 with, *cum*, (abl.)
 with me, *apud me*.
 without, *sine*, (abl.) *extra*.
 withhold, *arcere*.
 withstand, *sustinere*, (*sustinui, susten-*
tum.)
 wolf, *lupus*.
 wonder, *mirari*.
 wonderful, *mirus*.
 wont, to be, *solere*, (*solitus sum*.)
 wood, *silva*; the Teutoburgian wood,
saltus Teutoburgensis, (*saltus*; G. *ûs*.)
 wool, *lana*.
 word, *verbum*.
 work, *opus, eris*,
 world, *mundus*; *orbis terrarum*.¹
 worship, *côlere*,
 worse, *pejor*.
 worst, *pessimus*.
 worthy, *dignus*, abl.
 would that, *utinam*.
 wound, *vulnus, eris*.
 wrath, *ira*.
 write, *scribere*.
 writing, a, *scriptum*.
 wrong, *violare*.

Year, *annus*.
 yesterday, *hieri*.
 young man, *adolescens, tis*.
 young, (bird,) *pullus*.

Zama, *Zama*; G. *æ*.

¹ *Orbis terrarum*, when it is considered as made up of various lands or nations: hence it should be used when we speak of *subduing the world*.

THE END.

A LIST
OF
NEW AND IMPROVED
EDUCATIONAL WORKS,
EXTENSIVELY ADOPTED AS
TEXT BOOKS

IN
VARIOUS COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS;
INCLUDING
M. Ollendorff's New Method
OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK
THE FRENCH, SPANISH, ITALIAN, AND GERMAN
LANGUAGES;
AND
ARNOLD'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

PUBLISHED BY
D APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY, N. Y.
AND
GEO. S. APPLETON, 148 CHESNUT-ST., PHILA.
1848.

CRITICAL OPINIONS ON

M. OLLENDORFF'S METHOD OF LEARNING

The French, German, Spanish, and Italian Languages

In an article in the "*Methodist Quarterly Review*," entitled Modes of Teaching Languages, after describing the various modes of Teaching, it goes on to state:—

"Some ten years ago, it seems, Captain Basil Hall, of famous memory, first found out how to earn German. He had tried it again and again, but always found it impracticable until he stumbled on Herr OLLENDORFF, who was teaching German at the time in Paris, and who led him along not by the nose, but by the mouth, most gently and delectably, into a sufficient knowledge of that noblest of modern tongues. As the captain has always been distinguished for his gratitude, he repaid the skilful teacher a hundredfold, by a puff in 'Schloss Hainfeld,' that made him at once a man of notoriety and fortune.

"After six months of close application, I can venture to pronounce, that by Mr. Ollendorff's method alone, so far as I have been able to understand the subject, can this very difficult, but very charming language be taught without confusion. By it the scholar advances step by step, understands clearly and thoroughly every thing he reads, and as he goes on, he becomes sensible that all he learns he retains, and all that he retains is useful and practically applicable. At the same time, he scarcely knows how he got hold of it, so slightly marked are the shades of daily progression; and so gentle is the rise, that he feels no unpleasant fatigue on the journey. Of course, the student is called upon to exert no small degree of patient application, and he must consent to devote a considerable portion of his time to this pursuit; but he will have the encouraging conviction, that every particle of effort is well bestowed."

"Every body in Paris began to learn German *a la mode d' Ollendorff*, and in all German towns you might find Englishmen and Frenchmen thumbing the 'New Method,' and repeating its thousand phrases with commendable perseverance. In 1833 the system was introduced into England by the publication of the 'New Method of learning to read, write, and speak a *Language in Six Months, for the Use of Schools and Private Teachers*;' and although the complete work extended to three octavo volumes, and was sold at an enormous price,* it soon acquired a great circulation. We have before us the fourth edition. Nor was the reputation of the work confined to Europe; many copies were imported into this country, and of late the demand has been so great, that an American edition has been brought out in excellent style by the Messrs. Appletons, with the addition of a clear 'Systematic Outline of German Grammar,' prepared by Mr. Adler, of the University of New-York. Nor has this success been by any means undeserved: the book certainly goes further in smoothing the rugged road to German than any other book extant; and that too, not by attempting to dispense with the industry of the pupil, but by making all his industry profitable.

"It takes all that is good in the Hamiltonian method, by giving the words to be used at once to the student, and not sending him to the Dictionary to hunt them out; and it involves Jacotot's best principle of fixing the forms of the language by constant repetition, and supplying grammatical principles only as they are required. These are its chief excellences, and they are essential to any good system. The book, especially with Mr. Adler's appendix, is infinitely better adapted for use as an introduction to the German language than any other that we know of, and we hope it will obtain a wide circulation."

* "Teaching is worse paid than any other kind of labour; but it seems that when any particular teacher becomes the *rage*, he takes revenge on the public, and 'puts money in his purse.' We see from an advertisement at the end of Herr Ollendorff's second volume, that he teaches German in London at the pleasant price of £12 12s. sterling per quarter!"

New Orleans Commercial Times.

"Mr. OLLENDORFF'S new method of teaching languages—a method founded upon an analytical system, which simplifies and connects information, and proceeds by gradations from the easy to the difficult—has found more favour among teachers than any previous system. It has been applied with the utmost success, and has elicited the approbation of the best minds in the country. The system is one which it requires the patient study of a German to elaborate, but when once framed, its results are practical, complete, and speedy of attainment. We have no doubt that an intelligent person will master the intricacies of the French tongue, by the assistance of this work, in half the time it would require to wade through the interminable exercises of Wanostrucht and Leviuag."

Critical Opinions on Ollendorff's Method of Learning Languages.

CONTINUED.

New-York Courier and Enquirer.

"**OLLENDORFF'S SPANISH GRAMMAR.**—This is another number of the admirable series of elementary books of instruction in the language of Modern Europe, for which the public is indebted to the Appletons. Ollendorff's method of teaching languages, especially living languages, is now in universal use, and enjoys a very decided pre-eminence over any other now in use, inasmuch as it combines the merits, and avoids the faults of all others, and has, besides, many very marked and admirable peculiarities. No other books are now in general use, and his elementary treatises have won a unanimous favor not often accorded to any work in any department of human knowledge. Their chief peculiarity consists in this, that they lead the learner, by gradual steps, each perfectly simple and easy, from the first elements even to the nicest idiom of the various languages, comprehending, in the process, a complete mastery of Grammatical rules and colloquial phrases. They are in common use, not only in this country, but throughout Europe, and are likely to supersede, every where, all similar works.

"This method of learning SPANISH, which has just been issued, is likely to be even more widely useful, especially in this country, than those which have preceded it, since recent events have rendered a knowledge of Spanish more than usually important to all classes of our people. The editors of the work are widely known as accomplished scholars and distinguished teachers, and the book derives still higher authority from their connection with it. We commend it with great confidence to all who desire to become acquainted with the Castilian tongue."

The Tribune.

"The admirable system of teaching and learning modern languages, by Mr. Ollendorff, has attained a popularity and extension unprecedented in the history of education. Its effect upon the community of learners especially, is even now evident, and as time elapses will become still more so in the ease and correctness with which German, French, Italian, and Spanish are acquired and applied to the practical purposes of life. Mr. Ollendorff's books have now been some time before the public, not only in Europe, where he practically carries out the plans of instruction, but also in America, where the system has been faithfully tried and is appreciated by our best teachers and by thousands of learners. The present work seems to be prepared by gentlemen thoroughly conversant with the system in all its details. It is well worthy the attention of those desirous to become familiar with the noble Castilian tongue, that tongue which Charles V. once said those who spoke it used to speak like kings. The mechanical execution and appearance of the volume are in the usual style of clearness and beauty which characterizes Messrs. Appleton's publications."

Evening Post.

"**OLLENDORFF'S METHOD APPLIED TO SPANISH.**—D. Appleton & Co. have published Ollendorff's new method of learning to write and speak the Spanish language, by M. Velasquez and S. T. Simonne. The authors of this work are experienced instructors in the Spanish language. To Mr. Velasquez, many of our citizens are indebted for their acquaintance with the harmonious and majestic dialect which its admirers delight in calling Castilian.

"The method of Ollendorff is admirably suited to many minds—to young persons in particular, by whom the peculiar forms of a language are most easily learned by practice and a mere effort of memory. To persons of any period of life it is useful in imparting an accurate acquaintance with the idioms and conversational peculiarities of a language, and nobody could go through the course prescribed by it without some essential improvement in the accuracy with which he speaks the language.

"The work is neatly got up as respects its typographical execution."

Hunt's Merchant's Magazine.

"**OLLENDORFF'S new method of Learning to Read, Write, and Speak the German Language.** with a systematic outline of German Grammar by George J. Adler, is one of those rare works which leave nothing to be desired on the subjects of which they treat. The learner's difficulties are so fully and exactly provided for, that a constant sense of satisfaction and progress is felt from the beginning to the end of the book. A bare inspection of one of the lessons will satisfy any one acquainted with the elements of German grammar, that it adapts itself perfectly to his wants. With the systematic outline of grammar by Prof. Adler, the new method is substantially perfect, and it is probably second in its advantages only to residence and intercourse with educated Germans."

Protestant Churchman.

"The study of the German is becoming so essential a part of an ordinary education, that every work tending to facilitate the acquisition of the language should be welcomed. An American edition of Ollendorff has been much wanted. His system is based upon *natural* principles. He teaches by leading the student to the acquisition of phrases, from which he deduces the rules of the language. The *idioms* are also carefully taught, and the entire construction of the system is such that, if adhered to with fidelity and perseverance, it will secure such a practical knowledge of the German as can be acquired by no other mode, so rapidly and thoroughly. We heartily commend the book to all who really wish to understand a tongue which contains so many treasures."

Critical Opinions on Ollendorff's Method of Learning Languages.

CONTINUED.

Newark Daily Advertiser.

"We have already expressed our opinion upon Ollendorff's method of teaching languages as decidedly the best extant. His method is so simple, and divests the process of teaching of so much of its drudgery both as teacher and scholar, that when generally known it must be generally adopted."

Hartford Courant.

"We have already pronounced the Ollendorff series to be far superior to any other system for imparting an available knowledge of modern languages. These works, including those of the German, the French, the Italian, are but the transcript of nature's own method of teaching language; and hence they form a most complete and valuable series of text-books, alike adapted to the wants of the most critical student of these modern languages, or of those who wish to acquire merely a conversational use of the same.

"We most cordially and unqualifiedly recommend these books to Teachers and Friends of Education as decidedly the best series we have ever examined."

The Publishers have received over two hundred Letters from practical teachers, expressing their great satisfaction in the merits and usefulness of M. Ollendorff's Grammars. The following few are selected:

Hobart Hall, April 23d, 1847.

MESSE^{RS}. D. APPLETON & Co.—* * * Ollendorff's German Grammar acts like a charm, and with a use of only three months my German class can speak the German with great facility. The fact is, that Ollendorff has discovered the secret, the long-sought desideratum for overcoming the difficulties pertaining to the attainment of a new language. He only copies nature, and the dry mechanical arrangement of most Grammars being cast aside, he follows the natural way, and I can say, without hesitation, that he succeeds perfectly.

Very gratefully,

L. H. DELOSS CRANE

Blue-Hill Academy.

For beginners, Ollendorff's Grammars are worthy to supercede every other work; and even on the table of the scholar, by the side of the most elaborate German Treatises, they will not lie useless.

ISAIAH DOLE, A. M.

Princeton, Dec. 3d, 1846.

MESSE^{RS}. APPLETON & Co. Gentlemen—I am in the daily use of Ollendorff's German Grammar, and consider it decidedly superior to any other elementary work in this language. Immediately on the appearance of the French Grammar, I procured a copy of it, and have made some use of it, sufficient to satisfy myself that Ollendorff has applied his principles to the instruction of this language with the same success as that of the German.

Very respectfully, yours,

LYMAN COLEMAN.

Kinderhook Academy, April 7th, 1847.

MESSE^{RS}. D. APPLETON & Co. Gentlemen—We have introduced the entire course of French Books, re-published by your house in a style that does credit to American taste. We think Ollendorff's French Book decidedly superior to Manecsa's Course in exciting and retaining the interest of the pupil; and we are well satisfied with the proficiency which our classes have made by the aid of this work. The elegant arrangement of the *verbs*, both regular and irregular, deserves special notice; and in our opinion the work is worthy of a place in every academy in the land.

Very respectfully, yours,

SILAS METCALF.

Theological Sem. and Pa. College.

MESSE^{RS}. APPLETON—Having introduced Ollendorff's method of teaching German into my classes as an experiment, and tested it for one session, I have become fully satisfied that it is the one best calculated to impart to the learner a readiness in the use of the language; in the acquisition of modern languages it is now almost universally conceded that this plan is the best.

Respectfully yours,

CHARLES H. RAY.

ACCOMPANIMENT TO OLLENDORFF'S GERMAN GRAMMAR.

A PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READER,

PREPARED WITH REFERENCE TO

OLLENDORFF'S GERMAN GRAMMAR,

WITH COPIOUS NOTES AND A VOCABULARY,

BY G. J. ADLER,

Prof. of the German Language and Literature in the University of the City of New-York.

One neat Volume, 12mo. \$1.

The favourable reception which Ollendorff's German Grammar has received from the American public, has induced the Publishers and the Editor to comply with the very general demand for a *German Reader*.

Complaints, more or less loud, have been made both by teacher and learner, against most of the Readers heretofore offered to the public in this country, as well as in England and Germany. Books of this kind now in the market, may be reduced to two classes: 1st. *Selections from the German Classics, or Elegant Extracts*, corresponding somewhat to our English Readers. Of these, two deserve special notice, viz., GEORGE MUHL'S PROSE ANTHOLOGY, (Carlsruhe and London, 1839.) and in this country, FOLLEN'S GERMAN READER. The objections to the former are, that it contains no poems, and hence lacks an essential element of an introduction to German Literature, and presents too little variety to the learner; it has, moreover, no vocabulary, and the most difficult passages are often left unnoticed in the annotations. The latter is, as it regards the variety and the good taste exhibited in its matter, far superior to any other similar work, and has for many years been almost the only Reader in use among us. To learners not classically educated, however, (and to many that are,) the pieces near the beginning are by far too difficult, and the assistance too scanty. The arrangement is not progressive, so that pieces near the end of the book are much easier than many in the beginning or middle.

2d. The second class of Readers are such as profess to facilitate the business of reading. They are generally based on the *Hamiltonian* method, i. e., the pieces are accompanied with translations, either *interlinear* and *literal*, or *free* and *opposite*. The difficulty with the books of this class is, that they leave the learner where they found him, unable by himself to account for the grammatical construction of a sentence; and when he lays aside the book to take up another, he finds that it is one thing to read by the aid of a translation and quite another to read understandingly. The principal books of this class are Zimmer's *German Teacher*, (Heidelberg and London, 1839,) Gand's *Literary Companion*, (Frankfort, 1841,) better in its selections than the first, and Bokum's *German Reader*, (Philadelphia.)

The plan of this German Reader is as follows, viz.:

1. The pieces are both prose and poetry, selected from the best authors, and are so arranged as to present sufficient variety to keep alive the interest of the scholar.

2. It is progressive in its nature, the pieces being at first very short and easy, and increasing in difficulty and length as the learner advances.

3. At the bottom of the page constant references to the Grammar are made, the difficult passages are explained and rendered. To encourage the first attempt of the learner as much as possible, the twenty-one pieces of the first section are analyzed, and all the necessary words given at the bottom of the page. The notes, which at first are very abundant, diminish as the learner advances.

4. It contains five sections. The first contains easy pieces, chiefly in prose, with all the words necessary for translating them; the second, short pieces in prose and poetry alternately, with copious notes and renderings; the third, short popular tales of GRIMM and others; the fourth, select ballads and other poems from BUEGER, GOETHE, SCHILLER, UHLAND, SCHWAB, CHAMISSE, etc.; the fifth, prose extracts from the first classics.

5. At the end is added a VOCABULARY of all the words occurring in the book.

BOJESEN AND ARNOLD'S
MANUALS of GREEK and ROMAN ANTIQUITIES

I.
A MANUAL OF GRECIAN ANTIQUITIES.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN,

Professor of the Greek Language and Literature in the University of Soro.

Translated from the German.

EDITED, WITH NOTES AND A COMPLETE SERIES OF QUESTIONS, BY THE REV. THOMAS
K. ARNOLD, M. A.

FIRST AMERICAN EDITION, REVISED WITH ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS
One neat volume, 12mo. Price 62½ cents.

II.
A MANUAL OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.
WITH A SHORT
HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

BY DR. E. F. BOJESEN.

EDITED BY THOMAS K. ARNOLD, M. A.

One neat volume, 12mo. Price 62½ cents.

* * THE ABOVE TWO VOLUMES BOUND IN ONE. PRICE \$1.

The present manuals of Greek and Roman Antiquities are far superior to any thing on the same topics as yet offered to the American public. A principal Review of Germany says of the Roman Manual:—"Small as the compass of it is, we may confidently affirm that it is a great improvement (on all preceding works of the kind). We no longer meet with the wretched old method, in which subjects essentially distinct are herded together, and connected subjects disconnected, but have a simple, systematic arrangement, by which the reader easily receives a clear representation of Roman life. We no longer stumble against countless errors in detail, which, though long ago assailed and extirpated by Niebuhr and others, have found their last place of refuge in our Manuals. The recent investigations of Philologists and jurists have been extensively, but carefully and circum-spectly used. The conciseness and precision which the author has every where prescribed to himself, prevents the superficial observer from perceiving the essential superiority of the book to its predecessors, but whoever subjects it to a careful examination will discover this on every page."

The Editor says :—"I fully believe that the pupil will receive from these little works a correct and tolerably complete picture of Grecian and Roman life; what I may call the POLITICAL portions—the account of the national constitutions and their effects—appear to me to be of great value; and the very moderate extent of each volume admits of its being thoroughly mastered—of its being GOT UP and RETAINED."

From Professor Lincoln, of Brown University.

I found on my table after a short absence from home, your edition of Bojesen's Greek and Roman Antiquities. Pray accept my acknowledgments for it. I am agreeably surprised to find on examining it, that within so very narrow a compass for so comprehensive a subject, the book contains so much valuable matter, and indeed so far as I see, omits noticing no topics essential. It will be a very useful book in Schools and Colleges, and it is far superior to any thing that I know of the same kind. Besides being cheap and accessible to all students, it has the great merit of discussing its topics in a consecutive and connected manner."

A NEW SCHOOL AND REFERENCE DICTIONARY.

**A
DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE**

**CONTAINING THE
PRONUNCIATION, ETYMOLOGY, AND EXPLANATION
OF ALL WORDS AUTHORIZED BY EMINENT WRITERS ;**

TO WHICH ARE ADDED,

**A VOCABULARY OF THE ROOTS OF ENGLISH WORDS,
AND AN ACCENTED LIST OF GREEK, LATIN, AND SCRIPTURE PROPER NAMES**

**BY ALEXANDER REID, A.M.,
*Rector of the Circus School, Edinburgh.***

WITH A CRITICAL PREFACE,

**BY HENRY REED,
*Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania,***

AND

AN APPENDIX,

Showing the Pronunciation of nearly 3000 of the most important Geographical Names.

One volume 12mo, of near 600 pages, neatly bound in leather. Price \$1 00.

Among the wants of our time was a good Dictionary of our own language, especially adapted for academies and schools. The books which have long been in use were of little value to the junior students, being too concise in the definitions, and immethodical in the arrangement. Reid's English Dictionary was compiled expressly to develop the precise analogies and various properties of the authorized words in general use, by the standard authors and orators who use our vernacular tongue.

Exclusive of the large numbers of proper names which are appended, this Dictionary includes four especial improvements—and when their essential value to the student is considered, the sterling character of the work as a hand-book of our language will be instantly perceived.

The primitive word is distinguished by a larger type ; and where there are any derivatives from it, they follow in alphabetical order, and the part of speech is appended, thus furnishing a complete classification of all the connected analogous words of the same species.

With this facility to comprehend accurately the determinate meaning of the English word, is conjoined a rich illustration for the linguist. The derivation of all the primitive words is distinctly given, and the phrases of the languages whence they are deduced, whether composite or simple ; so that the student of foreign languages, both ancient and modern, by a reference to any word, can ascertain the source whence it has been adopted into our own form of speech. This is a great acquisition to the person who is anxious to use words in their utmost clearness of meaning.

To these advantages is subjoined a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, which is of peculiar value to the collegian. The fifty pages which it includes, furnish the linguist with a wide-spread field of research, equally amusing and instructive. There is also added an Accented List, to the number of fifteen thousand, of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names.

With such novel attractions, and with such decisive merits, the recommendations which are prefixed to the work by Professors Frost, Henry, Parks, and Reed, Messrs. Baker and Greene, principals of the two chief grammar schools at Boston, and by Dr. Reese, Superintendent of Common Schools for the city and county of New-York, are justly due to the labors of the author. They fully corroborate the opinion expressed by several other competent authorities, that "Reid's English Dictionary is peculiarly adapted for the use of schools and families, and is far superior to any other existing similar compilation."

PROF. MANDEVILLE'S COURSE OF READING.

OPINIONS OF ITS MERITS.

[Letter from the Rev. J. R. Boyd, Author of the "Elements of Rhetoric and Literary Criticism," and "Eclectic Moral Philosophy."]

WATERTOWN, Dec. 28, 1846.

Having examined, with some care, the recent work of Prof. Mandeville, entitled a "Course of Reading," I am free to express the opinion that it possesses transcendent claims to public acceptance and use. It is not a mere collection of pieces in Prose and Verse, like the reading books in common use, but a work on the art of reading, constructed upon a plan that seems peculiarly well adapted to accomplish more by far than other reading books. It embraces a philosophical analysis of the English language, in its letters, elementary sounds, and various forms of sentences. The nature and uses of the various parts of speech are very properly and minutely explained as a preliminary to the classification and description of all the sentences or formulas of thought to be found in the English language. Numerous examples of each kind of sentence are given *separately*, and instructions for the manner of reading them are furnished. By this process the acquisition of the art of reading must be greatly facilitated. The next process carries the student forward to the reading of paragraphs, as found in the connections and relations of ordinary discourse, and these are to be analyzed into their component parts according to instructions previously given and acted upon in the reading of separate and classified sentences.

I agree with the author in the belief that his work is peculiarly well adapted to impart a knowledge of the structure of the English language; that it lays a broad and just foundation for an intelligent and correct delivery; that it prepares the pupil for the study of English Grammar and indeed introduces him to a practical and useful acquaintance with not a small part of what properly belongs to the science of Grammar, but not less so to the art of Reading; and further, that it furnishes a very happy introduction to the art of Rhetoric, or of English Composition.

The peculiarities of the work are briefly set forth by the author in the following words:—"Every sentence in the language is described; and every sentence has its own delivery. The structure learned therefore by one, two, or at most three reviews, it is learned forever. Henceforward as soon as a sentence falls under the observation of the pupil, he knows how it should be read; and while he can read it, he can give a solid reason for its being read in that particular manner."

Such being the general features of the work under consideration, I shall consider it a pleasing duty to make an experiment of its value with classes under my care, and to recommend the same experiment to other instructors.

J. R. BOYD,

Principal Jefferson County Institute.

November 27, 1846.

DEAR SIR,—Having examined with considerable care "Mandeville's Course of Reading," I consider it of far more practical value, as a means of making correct readers, than any other that has come under my observation; and although sensible of the inconvenience arising from a frequent change of books, I cannot avoid the conviction that the introduction of the work under consideration, would greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil in this elegant and useful accomplishment. The author has not attempted a servile imitation of what others have done, but has originated an entirely new plan—a plan as scientific as it is original, and as useful as it is beautiful. I cannot but deem it a valuable accession to the means of instruction employed in our common schools and academies. I shall introduce it into my own school.

Very respectfully,

J. H. PURKITT.

MT. PLEASANT BOARDING AND DAY SCHOOL, }
Roxbury, Mass. }

